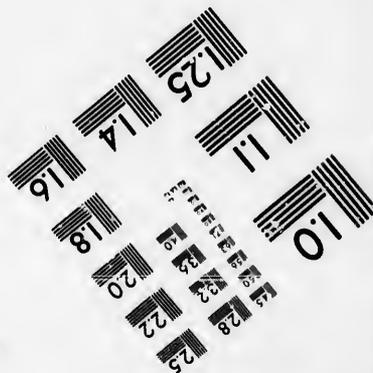
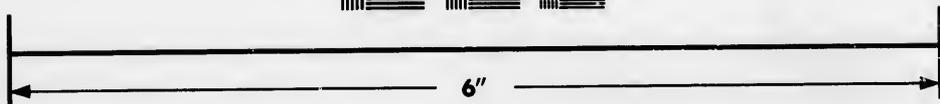
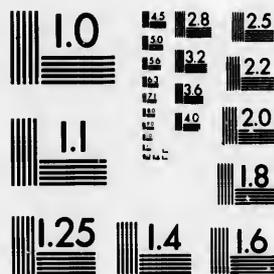


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
ROCHESTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 873-4503

1.5 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0  
4.5 5.0 5.6 6.3 7.1 8.0 9.0 10.0

**CIHM/ICMH  
Microfiche  
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches.**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4 1.5 1.6 1.7 1.8 1.9 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4 2.5 2.6 2.7 2.8 2.9 3.0 3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5 3.6 3.7 3.8 3.9 4.0 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 4.6 4.7 4.8 4.9 5.0 5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5 5.6 5.7 5.8 5.9 6.0 6.1 6.2 6.3 6.4 6.5 6.6 6.7 6.8 6.9 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 7.5 7.6 7.7 7.8 7.9 8.0 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 8.5 8.6 8.7 8.8 8.9 9.0 9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 9.7 9.8 9.9 10.0

**© 1985**

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured covers/<br>Couverture de couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured pages/<br>Pages de couleur   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers damaged/<br>Couverture endommagée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages damaged/<br>Pages endommagées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Covers restored and/or laminated/<br>Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée  | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages restored and/or laminated/<br>Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Cover title missing/<br>Le titre de couverture manque   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/<br>Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured maps/<br>Cartes géographiques en couleur   | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages detached/<br>Pages détachées  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/<br>Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)   | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Showthrough/<br>Transparence   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Coloured plates and/or illustrations/<br>Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur  | <input type="checkbox"/> Quality of print varies/<br>Qualité inégale de l'impression   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Bound with other material/<br>Relié avec d'autres documents   | <input type="checkbox"/> Includes supplementary material/<br>Comprend du matériel supplémentaire   |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion<br>along interior margin/<br>La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la<br>distorsion le long de la marge intérieure  | <input type="checkbox"/> Only edition available/<br>Seule édition disponible   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Blank leaves added during restoration may<br>appear within the text. Whenever possible, these<br>have been omitted from filming/<br>Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées<br>lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,<br>mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont<br>pas été filmées. | <input type="checkbox"/> Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata<br>slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to<br>ensure the best possible image/<br>Les pages totalement ou partiellement<br>obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,<br>etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à<br>obtenir la meilleure image possible. |
| <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Additional comments:/<br>Commentaires supplémentaires:   | Wrinkled pages may film slightly out of focus.   |

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/  
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
					✓						

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

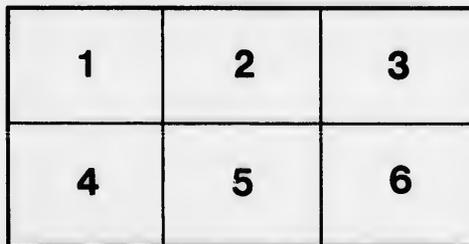
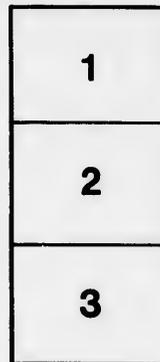
Library of the Public  
Archives of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

La bibliothèque des Archives  
publiques du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

errata  
to

pelure,  
on à

32X

A

V

No

*Hudso*

Wes

*A*

Performed

*Califor*

By :  
*Theodo*  
*Ad*

And Sold by  
*in Fleet-st*

24  
1572

A N  
A C C O U N T  
O F A  
V O Y A G E  
For the Discovery of a  
North-West Passage  
B Y  
*Hudson's* S T R E I G H T S,  
T O T H E  
Western and Southern Ocean  
O F  
A M E R I C A.

Performed in the Year 1746 and 1747, in the Ship  
*California*, Capt. *Francis Smith*, Commander.

By the CLERK of the *CALIFORNIA*.  
*Theodore Swaine*  
Adorned with CUTS and MAPS.

V O L. I.

L O N D O N, PRINTED;

And Sold by Mr. JOLLIFFE, in *St. James's-street*; Mr. CORBETT,  
in *Fleet-street*; and Mr. CLARKE, under the *Royal Exchange*.  
M. DEC. XLVIII.

1748

4333.22



P R E F A C E

Faint, illegible text, likely the beginning of a preface or introduction, possibly containing the words 'The author of this work...'.

Faint, illegible text, likely the end of a preface or introduction, possibly containing the words 'I have the honor...'.



P



*serv*  
*story*  
*Dec*  
*Man*  
*adja*  
*and*  
*most*

*W*  
*form*  
*West*  
*by th*



# P R E F A C E.

 *Propose, in this Volume, an Account of the Transactions of this Voyage, and of whatever during that Time occurred worthy of Observation, either in Relation to natural History, or other Incidents until the 10th of December 1746; and an Account of the Manners of the Indians frequenting the Parts adjacent to Hudson's Streights and Bay; and these Customs compared with those of the most ancient Times.*

*What hath been done by those who have formerly gone upon the Discovery of a North-West Passage, hath been made publick either by themselves or others, with the Intent that*

A

the

## P R E F A C E.

*the succeeding Attempters might avoid the Hazards and Dangers they had met with, and benefit by their Observations. For the very same Reasons I think myself obliged to publish a true and plain Narrative of this Voyage, which deserves not less, if not more, than any of the preceding ones to be communicated to the Publick.*

*Those Gentlemen who subscribed to this Undertaking will here receive an impartial Account, and, I hope, will be satisfied by the Reasons given for their particular Expectations not being answered, and will receive a greater Information of those almost unknown Parts of the World, than they could possibly have gathered from any Treatise before this; and from this, and the succeeding Volume, will be able to judge what may be expected from another Expedition.*

*The Account of the Weather from the Time the Ships went from the Orkneys, to their Arrival on the Western Side of Hudson's Bay, may be thought tedious, but I hope it will meet with the Excuse of those who shall think it so; when they consider that nothing is more inquired after in a Voyage of this kind, than the Temperature of the Climates which are passed, and that there is no other Way of giving*

P R E F A C E.

an Idea of it, than by setting down the Weather of every Day in particular, with its Alterations and Changes; nevertheless it is put in such a Manner, as it may be easily passed over.

By giving a Particular Account of the Ice met with in the Voyage, of the Method of managing a Ship, when amongst it, and by inserting what is observable out of other Voyagers into these Parts relating to the Ice, every one will have a clear Idea of the Nature of the Ice in such Passages, and from whence the Ice proceeds, by which Ships that make this Voyage are so much obstructed.

The Account of the Winter I hope will be to the Reader's Satisfaction. I have been very Particular in describing the Habitations which the People dwell in during the Winter, the Habit they wore, and Manner of Living, as it may be of Service in any future Expedition, and what is observed as to the Fowl and the Beast, not being taken Notice of in any Account before, I thought it might be worth the Reader's Attention.

As to the Manners of the Indians frequenting the Southern Part of Hudson's Bay, and

P R E F A C E.

as to the *Esquemaux* Indians who frequent *Hudson's Streights*, and the *Western Part* of the Bay, I have mentioned what I could attain by my own Observation, and that which I could rely on as *Faët*, from the Relations which were made me by others. There being a great Similitude in the Manners of the Indians frequenting the South Part of *Hudson's Bay*, with the Manners of the People in the earliest Times; I thought an Inquiry of that kind might not be dissatisfactory to the Curious. *Father Laffitau*, a *Jesuit*, hath done this with respect to the *Hurons* and *Iroquois* Indians, and where these Indians agree in their Manners with the *Hurons* and *Iroquois*, I have principally followed the *Father*, but where they do not agree in Manners with the *Iroquois* and *Hurons*, I have there shewn the Similitude of their Manners with the *Antients* upon Researches of my own.

The many Quotations taken from the Accounts of the former Discoverers, not only make this Account more intelligible, but also make it rather to be a compleat History of all the Undertakings for the Discovery of a *North-West Passage*, than of one particular Voyage. I was also in Part induced to this, as the former Accounts are scarce, seldom taken in Hand, and are in a fair Way

of be  
Voyag  
Accou  
amuf  
two  
Aug  
subscr  
the  
from  
doubt  
shall  
face

Th  
genuo  
had  
Work  
thoug  
that  
to the  
Gent  
much  
in the  
never

As  
is tak  
tain  
Copy  
relati

P R E F A C E.

of being intirely lost, as in a late Edition of Voyages they were rejected to make room for Accounts of other Voyages which were more amusing. The Publication of this Work in two Volumes instead of one, as there is no Augmentation of Price to those who have subscribed, I believe will need no Apology, and the Alteration of the Manner of the Work from what was mentioned in the Proposal, I doubt not, will meet their Excuse when they shall see the Reasons for so doing in my Preface to the next Volume.

There is a Necessity to mention the Disingenuous Treatment I have met with after I had published my Proposals, in having the Work represented as a false partial Account, though no one ever read it, or saw it, and that it was compiled from bad Materials; as to the Falshood and Partiality of it, these Gentlemen I believe will appear now to be as much mistaken in that Respect, as they were in their Representations, that the Work would never come out.

As to the Materials from which the Work is taken, I must observe, that, excepting Captain Moor's Log-Book, and one Report, a Copy of which I have, all the other Papers relating to the Voyage, and which are in the  
Hands

## P R E F A C E.

*Hands of the North-West Committee, were written by me; and are Copies of Originals in the Hands of Capt. Smith, all of which (excepting two) were either drawn solely by me, or I assisted in drawing them; and also took the Minutes from which they were composed, when out in the Long-Boat: What Pretence then hath the Author of the Genuine Account, who hath only made use of my Copies in the Hands of the Gentlemen of the North-West Committee, never saw the Originals, or the Minutes, or some of the Places referred to in such Papers, to boast the Superiority of his Account over mine, as being drawn from original Papers as set forth in the Advertisement, and which Papers he knew at the same Time I was the principal Author of?*

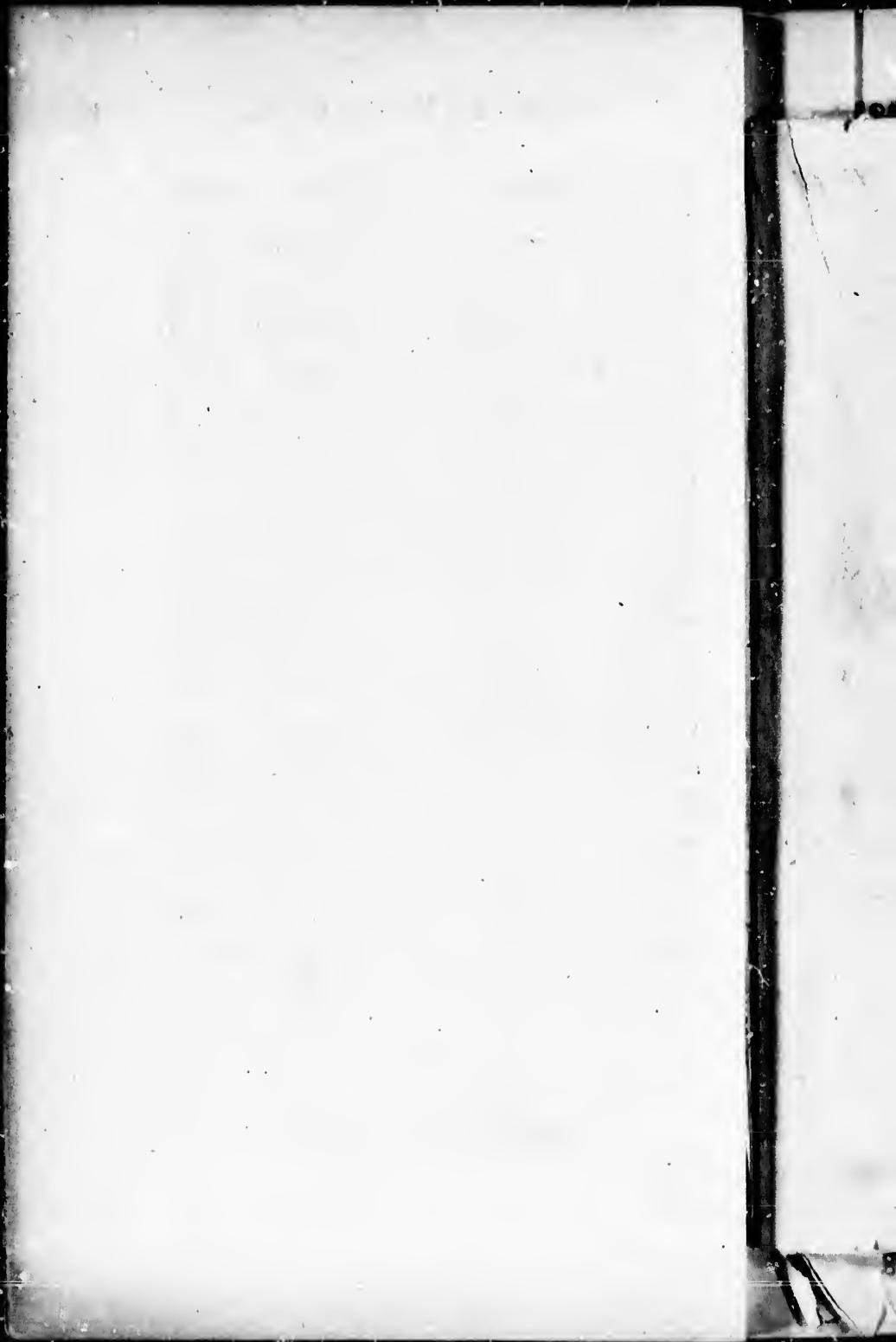
*Besides all the Informations which I could have from the Ship's Papers, which, as Clerk, could not miss my Observation. My Intention to publish an Account of the Voyage, caused me to keep a particular Journal from my first setting out; the Author of the Genuine Account had no Intention of writing an Account of a Voyage, until some Weeks after the Ships came Home.*

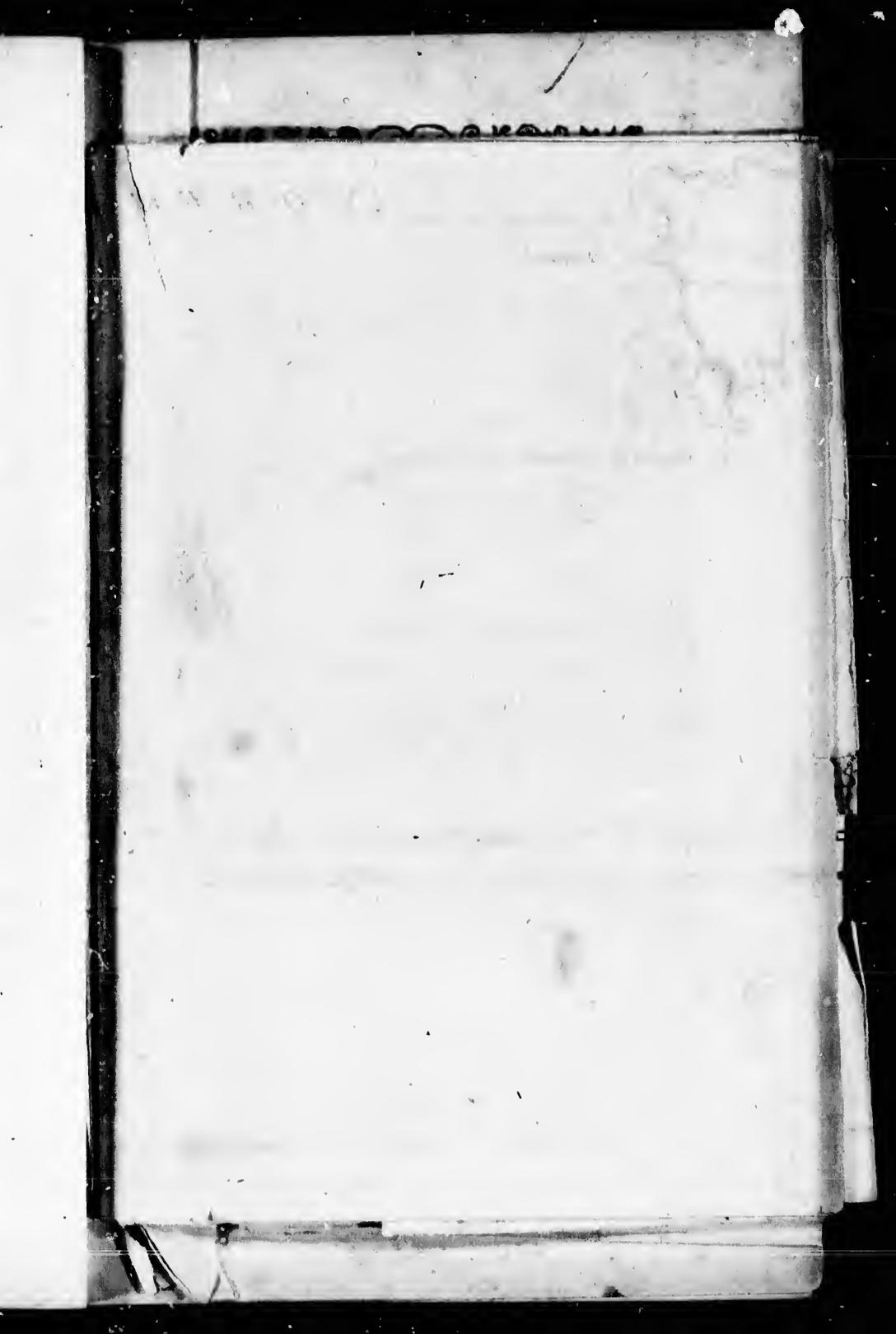
As

As  
being  
was u  
the Vo  
the C  
Draft  
the Bo  
beg L  
North  
so stile  
they or  
Chara  
whethe  
the Co  
oy Cap  
Genui  
whethe  
Procee  
wrote  
tions,  
any o  
found

*As to the Author of the Genuine Account, being Agent for the Subscribers, he never was understood to be in that Character during the Voyage, he was in the Instructions given the Captains named as a Mineralist and Draftsman, and to be as all the Officers above the Boatswain were, one of the Council. I beg Leave to appeal to the Gentlemen of the North-West Committee, whether they did not so stile him in the Instructions, and whether they ordered him to be received in any other Character than Mineralist and Draftsman; whether there hath not been a greater Part of the Coast surveyed by Captain Smith, than by Captain Moor, whom the Author of the Genuine Account always accompanied; and whether they have not a fuller Account of the Proceedings of the Voyage from the Papers wrote by me, under Captain Smith's Directions, than they have had by the Papers of any other Person, and whether they have found any Reason to Question their Veracity.*

Veritas est, et Prævalebit.





...  
...  
...

A

...



of M  
failed  
gain  
there

TH  
Ships  
failed  
*moutb*  
unrig



A N  
A C C O U N T  
O F A  
V O Y A G E, &c.



THE Ship *California*, Capt. *Francis* May 26.  
*Smith* Commander, sailed from the 1746.  
*Hope* on the Expedition, for the  
Discovery of a North-West Pas-  
sage, on *Sunday* Morning the 26th  
of *May* 1746, her Consort, the *Debbs*, having  
sailed the Evening before. Both Ships met a-  
gain in *Hofely-Bay*, on *Monday* Afternoon, and 27.  
there joined the Convoy.

The Convoy and Fleet, in which were four  
Ships belonging to the *Hudson's-Bay* Company, 23.  
sailed early on *Tuesday* Morning, arriving in *Yar-*  
*mouthe* Roads that Evening; where the *California*  
unrigging one of her Masts was not ready to fol-  
low



NEW GREENLAND

OLD GREENLAND

NORTHERN OCEAN

NEW BRITAIN OR LABRADO COAST

Warricks Foreland

Elizabeths Foreland

C. Discord

C. Vaarwel

C. Farewel or Staten Lock



A CHART of the NORTHERN OCEAN between SCOTLAND & CAPT...

50 45 40 35 30 25

55

60

55

50

45

40

35

30

25



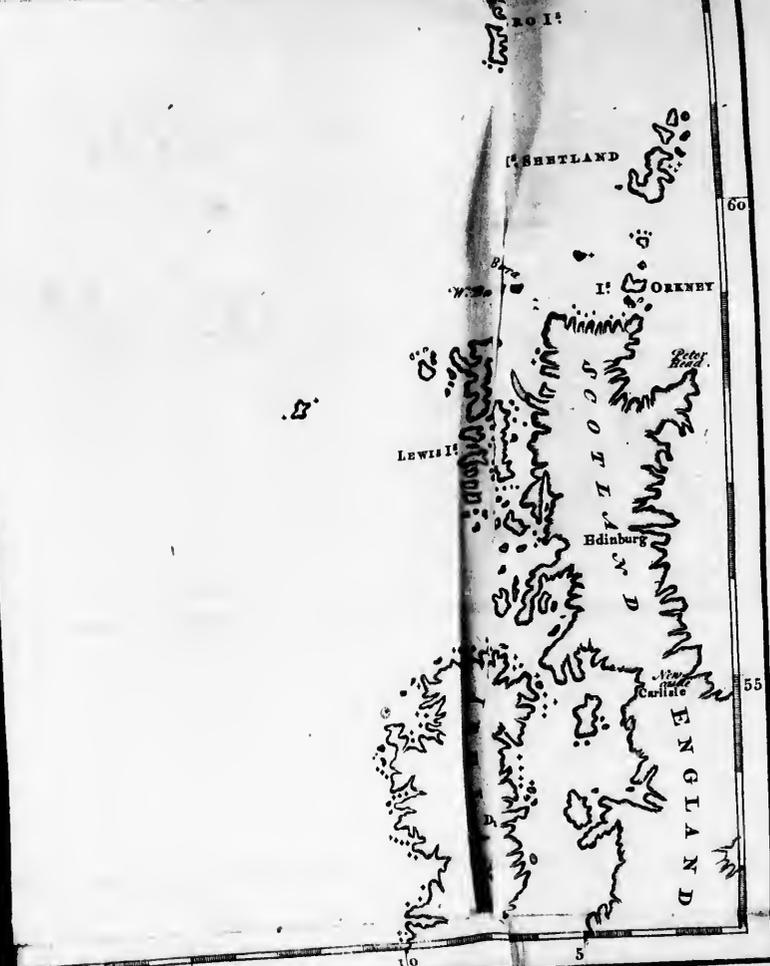
O C E A N

A CHART  
of the  
SOUTHERN OCEAN,  
SCOTLAND & CAPE FAREWELL.

KNEY ISLES.



Kingsfords Sound -  
Hornwall Bay -  
Carleton Harbour  
Key-head



30 25 20

15 10 5

65

60

55

## A VOYAGE for the

May 29. low on *Wednesday* Afternoon, when not only the Convoy and Fleet but also the *Dobbs* got under Way; the Wind changing, they returned; continuing in the Roads until *Friday* after. On 31<sup>st</sup>.  
 June 2<sup>d</sup>. *Sunday* Night were at an Anchor off *Tinmouth*, whither the *Hudson's-Bay* Ships had hurried to arrive before the rest of the Fleet, that they might have Time to procure a Pilot for the Convoy, for the Northward, the Convoy not intending to stop with the rest of the Fleet, had they not been becalmed.

4<sup>th</sup>. *June* the 4<sup>th</sup> in the Morning, the Convoy then off *St. Abb's Head* (after seeing some Provision Ships into *Edinburgh Firth*) spread an extraordinary Sail, leaving the *California* by four in the Afternoon (then in Sight of *Peterhead*) two Leagues behind her, and the *Dobbs* one; and at two the next Morning the *California* was within two Miles of the Fleet, when, they spreading the Sail which they had shortened on account of the Night, went away again, the *Dobbs* with them; at eight in the Morning they were a long Way a Head, steering as though they intended to go clear of the Islands, and directly through the *Firth* between *Shetland* and the *Orkneys*, which, as the Wind was, Captain *Smith* thought impracticable, therefore determined not to follow; and as the Weather was bad, and likely to be worse, concluded to gain *Cairston Harbour* in the *Orkneys*, a Place appointed for the *Dobbs* and *California* to touch at, and if separated, for their first Rendezvous. The

The hazy and rainy Weather with hard Squalls<sup>June.</sup> of Wind made it some Time before the Land, which afterward proved the *Mullbead*, could be distinguished. At three passed *Coppinsba* within half a Mile. Before four were by *Rossness* Point, and into *Ham* Sound; where on firing a Swivel three People came Aboard, two of them offering their Service as Pilots for *Cairston* Harbour, which almost every one in that Part is qualified for; which Fact if not known by a Commander, their odd Appearance may be an Objection to his employing them. One of them staid Aboard, the other two went to a Ship coming in, which as we afterwards learned was bound for *Antegoa*, and had kept Company with the Convoy from *Yarmouth*, but now being left, would not have dared to come in with the Land, had she not seen the *California* enter before her. At eight in the Evening we anchored in *Cairston* Harbour, in which was the *Shirk* Sloop of War, Captain *Middleton*, whom we saluted, and our Salute was answered.

At Night we had extreme bad Weather, but the Convoy and the other Ships were secure in *Kirkwall* Bay: The Convoy having in the Afternoon applied to Captain *Moor* in the *Dobbs*, to know where they were, and whether it would not be best to go for a Harbour: Captain *Moor* spoke to the Captains of the *Hudson-Bay* Ships, who consented, and one of them led away for *Ham* Sound;

4

June.

## A VOYAGE for the

Sound; which the Pilot of the Man of War, whom the *Hudson's-Bay* Men had procured at *Tinmouth*, knew nothing of; the Pilot knew only to carry the Man of War the Course, the *Hudson-Bay* Ships were appointed by their Instructions to steer, between *Shetland* and the *Orkneys*. About ten the next Morning they came into the Harbour, where they as little expected to see us as we for to be rejoined by them, they thought that we were lost; if not lost, that we had got into some Port in the North of *Scotland*.

6th.

12th.

Upon *Thursday June* the 12th, the Wind coming fair, we left *Cairston* Harbour, our former Convoy being exchanged for Captain *Middleton* in the *Shirk*. We were in all eight Sail, exclusive of the Convoy, the four *Hudsen's-Bay* Ships, one for *Antegoa*, another for *Boston*, the *Dobbs* and the *California*. Were becalmed that Afternoon and so in the Evening, but with a great Swell, until about two in the Morning of the 13th; fine pleasant Weather; at two a light Wind sprung up at S. W. which afterwards proved a fresh Gale, then S. W. by W. with Milling; *Hayhead* appearing like an Island, at eight bearing S. E. by E.  $\frac{1}{2}$  E. distant about ten Leagues. In the Evening the Wind moderated and the pleasant Weather returned; little Wind and fine Weather continuing all that Night and the next Day; when about two in the Afternoon we saw the Island of *East Barra* S. W.  $\frac{1}{2}$  W. distant four or five Leagues; the Eastermost Part formed like a Haycock, the rest like

13th.

14th.

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

5

like a Boar's Back : Near two Leagues beyond lies June. another rocky Island, the Island of West Barra, which is low to the Eastward and rises in a high Point to the Westward. The East Barra is inhabited by seven Families and a *Romish* Priest; their only Subsistence is what that small Island produces, or what they can procure by Fishing.

There was no Alteration of Weather to the 15<sup>th</sup>. Morning of the 15<sup>th</sup>, only cloudy at Times; in the Afternoon hazy at Times with Misting; little Wind which freshened towards Midnight, when it was hazy with Misting; at four the next 16<sup>th</sup>. Morning clear of Haze, but blows hard and in Squalls; at eight less Wind with Rain, at ten the Wind again increases, blowing hard also in Squalls with Misting, and a grown; Sea which Weather continued, and the Convoy, at four that Afternoon, firing three Guns (which were answered with five) left us; having behaved in a Manner as must have given Satisfaction to the whole Fleet.

The Convoy having now left us, we soon expected to separate; the *Antegoa* and *Boston* Men could not long continue that Course, and, tho' the *Hudson's-Bay* Ships were for *Resolution* as well as we, yet we did not imagine they would keep 17<sup>th</sup>. with us; and on the 17<sup>th</sup> in the Evening, we altering our Course, they kept theirs, and were in the Night so intirely separated as not afterwards to see each other for that Year.

The

June. The Evening of the 17th was fair moderate Weather, with the Sea down, but about Midnight the Wind S. freshened with small Rain; at 18th. six blows hard, squally with small Rain; at twelve the Wind came round to E. and remain'd so all the Afternoon with Showers of Rain to eight, when the *Dobbs* People, it being the first Evening that we were left to ourselves, gave us three Cheers, which were as heartily answered.

19th.\* *June* the 19th <sup>a</sup> in the Morning, had fairer Weather, though a fresh Wind, in the Afternoon such Weather as on the 18th, but with this Addition, that the Squalls of Wind and Rain brought a Chill with them, which continued no longer than the Squalls; but on the <sup>b</sup> 20th and <sup>c</sup> 21st, to early of the Morning of the 22d the Chill continued, and on the Morning of the 22d it was Cold, than changed to temperate Weather; which Chill was probably not only owing to the Wind being between the N. and the E. but also to *Iceland*, which we were well to the Southward of, the first of these Days, and which we were running the Length of with a N. W. Course, the 20th and 21st; and the Cold on the Morning of the 22d may be attributed to our receiving the Wind at that Time, it being then N. E. over a larger Track of that Island, and from the Bays to the Northward of such Island (which Bays are

<sup>a</sup> 19th *June*, Long. 21°, 57", W. Lat. 59°, 1", N. <sup>b</sup> 20th *June*, Long. 25°, 11", W. Lat. 58°, 16", N. <sup>c</sup> 21st *June*, Long. 29°, 42", W. Lat. 58°, 15", N. <sup>d</sup> 22d *June*, Long. 33°, 12", W. Lat. 58°, 20", N.

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

7

are filled with Ice the greater Part of the Year June. than what we had received the Wind any of the preceding Days; and what seems to confirm the Observation is, that the Alteration of Weather was not attended with a Change of Wind.

The Change of Wind was on the Morning 23d. of the 23d to N. W. and continuing to vary between that and the W. S. W. grew at Noon so hazy, when we were in Long. 35. 20. Lat. 58. 11. continuing until five, that we could scarce see our Confort, though close a Head, and colder than it had been any Day before, and such Cold, much increased by a hard Gale, at W. N. W. with Squalls at N. W. which sprung up at Night, lasting until the Noon of the 24th; the Cold equal 24th. to sharp frosty Weather, in *England*, continued, beyond the Gale and until there was a Change of Wind at Midnight, to N. E.

This was looked on as very extraordinary Weather, and was supposed to be occasioned either by our being near Ice, or that the Spring this Year was late in those Parts, so that little of the Snow being dissolved, together with the great Quantity of floating Ice on the S. W. Coast of *Greenland*, and off *Farewell*, besides that Wall of Ice which lies the whole Year, from the Eastward of *Farewell*, round to the Westward: Might well cause such an Effect.

The Morning of the 25th was hazy, clear at 25th. Noon, hazy again at three, and at six in the Evening

° 17, N. b 20th  
N. c 21st June,  
22d June, Long,

June.

Evening we had an extreme white Fog, which was more disagreeable Weather than any we had experienced before, not on the Account of the Cold (though chillier than any other Part of the Day) but as the Fog wetted very much and also stunk. The Fog rose but a small Way above the Horizon, the Sun appearing white through it, and in the Hemisphere above a blew clear Sky. The Fog cleared about eight.

26th.

The 26th was cloudy with some Sun-Shine until Noon; at Noon clear with Sun-Shine, but in the Afternoon a Fog, such as had been the Evening before, continuing until six; then clear pleasant Weather. Captain *Moor*, about eight running alongside, hoisted his Ensign as a Signal of something discovered, which, on going to the Mast-head, proved to be Ice, making like Rocks with high Pinnacles upon them, not less in Circumference than 10 Miles, 6 or 7 Leagues distant N. W. by N. our Course N. W. by W. This Ice was by twelve discerned from the Deck, and at two there appeared something like a high Cape or Point of Land; but our View was further interrupted by the Weather changing to close and hazy.

27th.

The Morning of the 27th continued hazy with Misting, at six it fell to little Wind at E. with a small Swell, the Air chill and damp. Soon after eight, suddenly cold and a thick Fog, which Circumstances confirmed to Captain *Smith*, that  
Ice

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

9

Ice was near, and we soon perceived a large Piece June. a Head of the *Dobbs*; whose People, on being hailed, stopped the Ship's Way, and the Piece swam clear, of a scraggy Form; the Colour White tinged with Azure, the Azure the more prevalent: At eleven saw more Ice, the Fog still continuing; about half an Hour after eleven Pieces of Ice again, which became more frequent, large Pieces first, then large and small Pieces swimming thick and near together, many of the large Pieces ten Yards over and thirty round: The small Pieces mostly white, but the large azure with an upper Coat or Rind of White, the Sea calm and perfectly smooth, though the Wind was freshened; the Water making a Roaring through Cavities wrought by it in the large Pieces; and a rushing Noise as it passes over, or aside of the small and low Pieces, dipping, as they swim, from their being impelled by the Wind, or from their Motion not being proportionably fast with that of the Current.

Upon Captain *Moor's* Desire, we altered our Course; soon after falling in with what is termed heavy Ice, consisting of many large and high Pieces, some equal in Height to the Ship's Deck, and some few higher. Being surrounded by Ice and passing in narrow Streights, between these Hills of White and Azure, the Roar and Rush of the Sea heard on all Parts, the Fog confining our View to a very narrow Distance, and presenting continually fresh Objects, although it could not

C

but

but raise our Attention from the Novelty of the Scene, yet it afforded no Occasion to raise our Fears, there being no real Danger. The Lieutenant ahead comes to, or directs the Man at the Helm how to steer, and to avoid any Piece of Ice, as it is coming ahead; and if the Ship cannot go clear, but must engage with such Piece, then by a proper Management of the Fore and Main-top-sails which only are out, her Motion is so stopped that she may go gently up to it, and the Piece is pushed off with ashen Poles of 18 Feet long, shod with Iron, which from their Use are called Ice-Poles.

When the Ice would permit, a Signal was made to Captain *Moor* by firing of Guns (for the Fog still continued) for Tacking, which he answered; and in about half an Hour (it clearing up) we saw him half a League astern and staid for him until he came up. At four tacked, fell in again with more loose Islands of Ice; at half an Hour after four, stood S. by W. supposing thereby to get a clear Sea; shattered Ice until six, and at seven we were in a clear Sea. To-night, and also the Evening before, we saw Birds which were of the Size of a wild Duck, either single, two or three together, or in large Flocks, swimming on the Water, and which, when fired at, would just skim above the Surface, and settle within a few Feet from the Place they rose at: They are of a light Brown from the upper Part of their Beak, under their Eyes, and over the Head, down the hinder Part of their Neck and Wings, excepting the large

### *Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

11

large Feathers which are black, and the upper Part June.  
of their Tails: The Breast and Body are white;  
and under their Throat to the lower Part of the  
Beak, they are by some stiled Cape Birds, by others  
Sea-sweepers, and are said to be seen no where  
but within a hundred Leagues of Cape *Farewell*.

The Night of the 27th was close and hazy, so 27th.  
on the Morning of the 28th with Misting. Wind 28th.  
at E. met with no more Ice; and supposed our-  
selves to the Westward of Cape *Farewell* in Long.  
49°. 15' W. and by Observation in Lat. 58".  
12. N. upon going to the Mast-Head at Sunset,  
and seeing no Land, after ten altered our Course  
more Northerly, Steering N. W.

Cape *Farewell* is the South-westernmost Point  
of *Greenland*, discoverable, according to the  
*Dutch* Accounts, six or eight *Dutch* Miles or  
*English* Leagues from the Land, by them called  
*Staaten Hoek* or *States Point*, or *Promontory*,  
they giving the Name of *Vaarwell* (which answers  
in the *Dutch* to *Farewell*) to a Cape that lies to the  
Westward of *Greenland*, in Lat. 61. and remark-  
able by having a Bank off it, on which the Sound-  
ings are forty Fathoms; the same Cape which  
*Monck* so named in the Year 1619, when he took  
his Departure from thence for *America*. This *Staa-  
ten Hoek* of the *Dutch*, and which all *English* Navi-  
gators know by the Name of *Farewell*, was first  
discovered by Capt. *Davis* in the Year 1585 (who  
was the first Discoverer to the Southward and

## A VOYAGE for the

Westward of *Greenland*) and named by him *Farewell*, from not being able to come within two Leagues of the Land, as the Sea for that Distance from the Shore was full of Ice. The Land was very high and ragged, full of great Mountains all covered with Snow; for fifty or sixty Leagues; it tends towards the West, and then lies directly North; no Wood, Grass, or Earth to be seen. In a following Voyage made in the Year 1586, the Ice lay then in some Places twenty, some fifty Leagues off, so that he was forced to get into 57 Degrees to double such Ice, and get into a free Sea. Mr. *Hall* afterwards named the same Cape, *Cape Christian*, after the King of *Denmark*, in whose Service he then was; giving a Description similar to that given by Capt. *Davis*, viz. that it is a very high ragged Land, &c. and the Ice lay far from the Shore, being thick towards the Land, with great Islands of Ice, so that it was wonderful: And in another Voyage, which was in the Year 1606, Mr. *Hall* fell in upon his Return Home with Land to the Westward of *Farewell*, but supposing by his Observation that the Ship was to the Southward of the Latitude of such Cape (a Mistake which, considering the Thickness of the Air and the Instruments made use of at that Time, might easily happen) and not being able to judge by the Shore, as it was thick with Ice, whether the Land he then saw was Part of the Main or not: He so relied on his Observation as to conclude that it was not Part of the Main but must be an Island distinct from it, and to the Southward

war  
Lar  
Ship  
tion  
the  
with  
Lati  
Obs  
and  
suffi  
haw

A  
of a  
that  
E. b  
stand  
he ca  
had  
the S

T  
with  
we h  
Land  
the I  
will  
Place  
they  
such

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

13

ward of Cape *Farewell*, and therefore called the June. Land he so saw *Frost-Island*, after the Name of his Ship. All other Navigators agree with the Description given, describing it as high mountainous Land, the Mountains like Sugar-Loafs, and those covered with Snow, Ice lying off it the whole Year. The Latitude of *Farewell*, which according to the best Observation and safest to be used, is  $59^{\circ}. 45''$ . and the Longitude  $45^{\circ}$ . being made, you are then sufficiently to the Westward, so that you may hawl more to the Northward.

All the twenty-eighth, the Sea had appeared of a dirty green Colour, <sup>a</sup> Mr. *Hall* observes, that in the Year 1605, Cape *Christian* bearing N. E. by E. by Compass five Leagues distant, and standing to Seaward from the aforesaid Cape, he came into black Water as thick as though it had been puddle Water, sailing in the same for the Space of three Hours.

The twenty-ninth was a clear beautiful Day, 29<sup>th</sup>. with Sunshine and little Wind; in the Morning we had a Fog Bank E. N. E. much resembling Land, several of them arose in other Parts of the Horizon in the Afternoon. These Banks will stagger a good Judgment to discern in Places where Land may be expected, whether they be Fog Banks or the real Land, especially as such Banks will often from the Sun's Reflection

<sup>a</sup> *Purchase's Pil.* Lib. 4 Chap. 14.

appear

June.

appear white in Spots, resembling Snow on the Mountains so usual in these Parts. To distinguish whether it be a Fog Bank, or Land, you carefully observe whether there is any Alteration of the Form, or Shifting of the Outlines, which if there is, as it is not the Property of Land to change the Form, you know it to be one of these Banks.

We saw this Day, and also the Evening before, Birds which some call Gulls, others Strikers, about the Size of a Gull, a Head white with a black Beak, some of them had large black Spots upon the right Side of their Head, others not: Their Wings shap'd like a Hawk's, which, as well as their Body, are of a whitish grey Colour, much the Colour of a grey Owl in *England*: We saw also Willocks, Birds too well known on the Coast of *England*, off *Flamborough-head*, and to the Northward, to need any Description here.

30.

The pleasant Weather continued to the Noon of the thirtieth, then hazy Weather at three in the Afternoon, a brisk Wind with Mistling; in the Evening a Fog, which wetted, causing Damp, cold and raw Weather; the Fog lasted until four on the Morning of *July* the first, when hazy but dry

July 1st.

westwards; clear Weather and moist Fogs alternately succeed until Noon, with a sensible Difference, as to Cold, when the Fogs were on, and, when not, the Noon was cloudy but with some Sunshine; and all the Afternoon hazy with small Rain, which was much warmer than the Fogs;

the

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

15

the Wind also increased; in the Evening to- July.  
wards eight was less, and the Sea grew down,  
when the Rain ceased, with clearer Weather, tho'  
the Weather soon changed again; small Rain until  
twelve, and on *July* the second small Rain until three, 2d.  
Wind moderate, cloudy until eight; then a thick  
Fog and almost a Calm; small Rain at twelve,  
at one Rain over but cloudy; the Wind springs  
up at two, afterwards blowing fresh, and from  
five to eight small Rain, the Gale continuing with  
missing until next Morning, with the Change of  
Wind; which was at Noon, to N. N. W. from  
the S. by E. it was colder than it had been any  
Day before, and the Sea, which had continued  
from the twenty-eighth of a dirty green Colour,  
now appeared of a very deep Blue; the next  
Morning there were Squalls of Rain, and about 3d.  
seven, the Wind moderating, it grew foggy. The  
Fog soon gone but frequent Mists between that and  
twelve; from twelve to six cloudy, but the Sun  
breaking out at Times; from six to eight a Fog,  
then cloudy and a Calm at Midnight; Wind to  
S. W. clear Weather, the Morning of *July* the 4th.  
fourth until five; from five to eight missing,  
and from eight to eleven hazy with small Rain,  
which about eleven turned out into a regular  
falling Shower, the only one we have had since  
the eighteenth of *June*; it grew warmer after the  
Shower, and a Calm followed; hazy in the fore  
Part of the Afternoon, afterwards cloudy with  
some Rain at two; and at six regular Showers.  
The Wind came about to N. by E. and at eight  
to

July. to W. and at ten to N. W. moderate but causing it to be colder; about eight was a Fog, so again from ten to twelve, and from twelve to two.

5th. July the fifth, a Fog which wetted much; until four hazy with misting; and until six foggy, when the Wind changed to W. S. W. Saw several large Islands of Ice, the Morning being clear until ten; with an extraordinary bright Whiteness in some Parts of the Sky; the like we also saw on the Evening before between nine and ten; an Indication of Ice beneath. At ten hazy with misting; at twelve cloudy with some Sunshine, saw more Ice; before one, clear pleasant Weather, it was much warmer than at any Time it had been since our leaving *Farewell*, and in coming between *Farewell* and that Part in which we now were, we were sensible of an Augmentation of the Cold, as we increased our Latitude.

The Afternoon continuing clear and pleasant, saw more Islands of Ice, one equal in Size and much resembling a large *Gotbick* Church, appearing white by reason of the Brightness of the Afternoon; but, as the Sun declined, it appeared of a bluish Cast; such Weather as was in the Afternoon continued all that Night, excepting Rain about ten, calm Weather until twelve, and the next Morning Rain at four and five o'Clock with light Breezes afterwards; heard frequently a great Rush and Roar in the Water from the Pieces of Ice

Ice which broke off from an Island of very large July.  
Dimensions near to us; several other large Islands  
in Sight; which seemed to be carried in two several  
Currents, the one from N. W. the other from  
N. N. W. and to unite in a Current we met with  
the Afternoon before, running S. S. E.  $\frac{1}{2}$  E.

A large Island of Ice overfet, or eat through  
by the Water, the upper Part fell in Sight of  
Mr. *Hudson*, by which he learned not to go near  
the large Islands with his Ship. *Gatonbe* in  
his Account of Mr. *Hall's* Voyag, says, they  
met with many Islands of Ice, which were  
very high like Mountains, some of them they  
judged to be thirty Yards from the Water.  
\* *Baffyne* in his Account of Mr. *Bylot's* Expe-  
dition says, " we sailed by many great Islands of  
" Ice, some of which were above two hundred  
" Feet high above Water (as I proved by one  
" shortly after) which I found to be two hun-  
" dred and forty Feet high; and, if the Report  
" of some Men be true, who affirm, that there  
" is but one seventh Part of the Ice above Water,  
" then the Length of that Piece of Ice which I  
" observed was one hundred and forty Fathoms,  
" or one thousand six hundred and eighty Feet,  
" from the Top to the Bottom: This Propor-  
" tion I know doth hold in much Ice, but whe-  
" ther it do so in all I know not. However  
" incredible this may appear, it must be ad-

\* *Purchase's Pil.* Lib. 4. Chap. 18.

July.

mitted by all who have seen this mountainous Ice, that there are Islands surprisngly large; and, if we consider the Size these Islands are of, when they arrive on the Banks of *Newfoundland*, after receiving a great Diminution both from the Air and the Wash of the Sea in a Passage of so many Leagues, it will greatly help our Belief as to the prodigious Size which some of these Islands are of at their first being afloat, or when they are met with in these Parts.

These Islands are easily avoided, as they move but slowly; their Height and Colour make them very distinguishable, even in the dark Nights; they are not spread in the Sea like small Islands, but often single without any other Island near them for Leagues, and if there are several Islands in Sight at a Time, they are always at a Distance from each other.

The Noon of the sixth was foggy, afterwards hazy; the Wind N. and, as we passed near several large Islands of Ice, they caused a sensible Chills; at six cloudy, the Wind N. N. W. and the Weather colder; at nine a Fog, and at half an Hour after eleven a small Fall of Snow; the Morning of the seventh was hazy until two, foggy at four, afterwards pleasant clear Sunshiny Weather, though very cold, so the whole Day; and that Evening we looked out for Cape *Resolution*.

*Resolution* was discovered by Captain *Davis* the thirty-first of July, 1587, and the East End thereof

ther  
For  
had  
as w  
next  
or H  
*Wat*  
*Geor*  
like  
For  
war  
said  
the  
28th  
Sout  
disce  
a gr  
*Fore*  
the I  
in L  
in th  
of t  
N. I  
they  
caus  
Nor  
by *M*  
othe  
Capt  
“ L

thereof named *Cape Warwick*, or *Warwick's Foreland*, in Honour of that noble Family who had so greatly contributed to his Undertakings, as well as those of Sir *Martin Forbisher*; and the next Day, falling in with the Southermost Cape or Point of the Streights named it *Cape Chidley*.<sup>a</sup> *Warwick's Foreland* was again seen by Captain *George Waymouth* in 1602; the Headland rose like an Island, and, when they came near the Foreland, they saw four small Islands to Northward, and three small Islands to Southward of said *Foreland*. The *Foreland* was high Land, all the Tops of the Hills covered with Snow the 28th of *June*; the three small Islands to the Southward were also white, that they could not discern them from Islands of Ice; also there was a great Store of drift Ice, on the Side of the *Foreland*, but the Sea was altogether void of Ice; the Land did lie N. by E. and S. by W. six Leagues in Length. And the twenty-ninth at six o'Clock in the Morning, they were within three Leagues of the *Foreland*, then the Wind came up at N. E. by E. a good stiff Gale with Fog; and they were forced to stand to the Southward, because they could not weather the Land to the Northward; and, as they stood Southward along by *Warwick's Foreland*, they could discern no otherwise but that it was an Island, which, says Captain *Waymouth*, "if it fall out to be so, then "*Lumly's Inlet* (an Opening to the Northward of

<sup>a</sup> *Purchas's Pilgrim*, Lib. 4. Chap. 18.

July.

“ *Resolution* ) and the next Southerly Inlet (by  
 “ which he means the Entrance between *Resolution*  
 “ and *Cape Chidley* ) where the great Current setteth  
 “ to the West, must of necessity be one Sea, which  
 “ will be the greatest Hope of the Passage that  
 “ Way”. From what hath preceded, we may con-  
 clude, that those two, *Davis* and *Waymouth*, were  
 the Luminaries that lighted *Hudson* into his  
 Streights, who probably gave the Name of *Re-*  
*solution* ; for Sir *Thomas Button*, the next after  
 him, makes use of such Name, and, as a  
 Name given by some prior Adventurer, it is now  
 appropriated to both the great and lesser Isles,  
 they being stiled the Isles of *Resolution*, and the  
 Name of *Warwick* is almost lost in that of *Cape*  
*Resolution*, as they both import the same. *Cape*  
*Warwick* is rather to the N. E. than, as Captain  
*Davis* says, to the E. according to *Baffyne*’s  
 Description, who, anchoring in a good Harbour  
 on the West Side of *Resolution*, had an Oppor-  
 tunity to describe it with more Exactness. An  
 indifferent high Land to N. having one Hill or  
 Summit to the N. E. but to the S. it falleth  
 away very low.

Not seeing *Resolution* in the Evening, we were  
 8th. in Expectation of making it early the next Morn-  
 ning ; at twelve hazy, at two a thick Fog, when  
 we met with large Riplings and the Sea setting  
 twenty Ways, a Confirmation of our being within  
 two or three Leagues of the Streights ; therefore  
 brought too, as did Captain *Moor*, to wait for  
 clearer

clearer  
 now fr  
 the fir  
 disagre  
 Fog.  
 Pidge  
 Night  
 someth  
 make  
 a Sail.

At  
 ing fu  
 Parcel  
 of a b  
 Spits  
 of Ice  
 within  
 that.  
 Ridg  
 this S  
 tion (   
 the S  
 cleari  
 to to  
 vent  
 the L  
 Dang  
 Asho  
 expec  
 Purp  
 unde

clearer Weather to go in with: Our Ropes were July. now froze with Ice hanging on them, which was the first Time; the Weather not only cold, but disagreeably damp from the great Wetting of the Fog. Saw a Flight of wild Geese and some Sea Pidgeons; few Islands of Ice passed us in the Night, there was one large Island in Sight with something looming near, which we could not make a right Discernment of it, but supposed it a Sail.

At five, all Hands were called, the Fog clearing sufficiently to shew the supposed Sail to be a Parcel of Hummocks and small rounding Rocks, of a brown and yellowish flakey Stone, with some Spits or Inlets among the Rocks, which were full of Ice; the Fog hanging still on the high Land within, so that we were prevented from a Sight of that. There was little Snow, some in Spots or Ridges on the Side of the Hummocks. And upon this Shore which was the main Island of *Resolution* (it being stark calm with a strong Swell;) the Swell fat us very fast with little Prospect of clearing it, though our Boats were hoisted out to tow, and all other Endeavours used to prevent; with the Addition to our Misfortune of the *Dobbs* being seemingly nearer, so in greater Danger than ourselves: Had both Ships went Ashore, the most the People might have expected was to save their Lives, and to little Purpose, as they would have been almost under an absolute Certainty never to be taken off, in

July.

in want of all Subsistence, nothing there to erect a Tent with, no Place of Shelter to retire to, but must remain expos'd to the open Air, in so uncertain and severe a Climate. To be assur'd of being without Subsistence and Refuge is not only the Case upon any Accident (such as the Ship's going Ashore, or striking upon the Rocks) happening at *Resolution*, but it will be the same, if such Accident happen in any Part of *Hudson's* Streights, or in the Bay to the Northward: In which respect these Voyages are more dangerous than any other that are undertaken.

Coming nearer the Land, we found a Tide which, assist'd by a Breeze of Wind, set us off equally as fast from the Shore, as we had been before set on by the Calm and the Swell, and entered *Hudson's* Streights about ten o' Clock, meeting only with small straggling Ice, though the Entrance, or between *Resolution* and the South Main, is often fill'd from Side to Side. The Streights to the Westward of the Entrance are much broader than the Entrance, and, as the Ice is set forceably by the Currents from the broader Part into the narrow, by consequence it jams and fills such Narrow; and this at all such Times as large Bodies of Ice come down: The Currents also as they come out of the Streights, and the ebb Tides, from being streightened by the narrowness of the Entrance, run the more rapidly, and this Rapidity of the Tide and Currents, *Davis* and *Waymouth*, the first Discoverers took for a certain

certain S  
of their

The  
fomewh  
*Resolut*  
Cloud  
some S  
term'd  
Pieces  
saw the  
the Lar  
ing me  
lar Rai  
a large  
for M  
of the  
more  
Day  
poppl  
a Tin  
near I  
Land  
did n

TH  
Land  
and a  
S. E  
and  
Snow  
was f

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

23

certain Sign of another Ocean near, and by reason July.  
of their Rapidity called this Passage a Gulf.

The Weather was hazy until twelve, then somewhat clearer, and we saw the high Land of *Resolution*, E. S. E. shewing like a dark thick Cloud; in the Afternoon pleasant Weather with some Sun-shine, met with some sailing Ice, so termed because a Ship can sail clearly between the Pieces of Ice without altering her Course; and saw the Loomings of the Land of both Shores, the Land shewing very high. The next Morn-<sup>9th.</sup>ing met with more Ice, when there was a regular Rain that lasted some Hours, and tack'd for a large Body of Ice seen ahead, extending itself for Miles, and appearing just above the Surface of the Water like a white Crust or Rind; saw more Ice also in other Parts of the Day: This Day very cold, and in the Evening having a poppling Sea, were assured that we should be for a Time free from Ice, as the Water amongst, or near Ice, is at all Times smooth; saw also the Land of both Shores, had a Fog about six, which did not continue, and a Fog-Bank North.

The next Morning, *July* the tenth, saw<sup>10.h.</sup> Land N. E. clear Sun-shiny Weather, but cold and at twelve the Land from the N. W. to the S. E. by S. the Land S. E. by S. a low Point, and the Northermost Land high, with Spots of Snow lying on it; our Distance from such Land was six Leagues. Captain *Moor* hoisted his En-  
sign

24  
July.

## A VOYAGE for the

sign and fired several Guns as a Signal for Trade, the Wind being fresh and contrary.

This Land seemingly of a brown flakey Stone, is very high but of a gradual Ascent, with the Top level, and is called *Terra Nivea*, or *Snow Land*; appears as Part of the Main, but supposed an Island by Captain *Fox* and some others. Having made little Way in the Night, with our Wind small and contrary, which continued, to the Morning, very pleasant Weather, when Captain *Moor* again repeated the Signal for Trade. In the Afternoon it fell stark calm; about two of the Clock we heard a Halloing from Shorewards, and with a Glafs saw three Canoes coming; afterwards saw more Canoes, to the Amount of twenty, those in the hindermost Canoes seeming to labour extremely hard; they Halloed at Times, as they approached, which was answered from the Ships; when nearer, they called out *Chima*; this also is repeated by our People, and three Canoes which were forwarder than the rest made a Halt in a Line at about the Distance of a Musket-Shot; the Person in the middle Canoe, Elder than either of those in the other two, takes his Paddle with both Hands and holds it over his Forehead parallel to the Horizon, crying *Chima*, and lifting himself several Times from his Seat. the Person in the Canoe on the Right-hand shewed a Piece of Whalebone, repeating *Chima*, and moved his Left-hand circularly upon his left Breast; *Chima* was answered from the Ship, and they approach

proach nearer, soon after the rest of the Canoes July. came up.

The People are of a brown Complexion, broad-faced, with black Eye-brows, and Hair which is very thick, cut regulary round the Forehead, and reaching to their Shoulders; some had it tied in Knots of each side their Temples, several of the Elder ones had Whiskers, and one a short Beard: Their Eyes are small and brown, Nose and Lips large, have very good Teeth, are tall, lusty rather than fat, streight-limb'd, their Hands and Feet small; cloathed all over, excepting Hands and Face, their Cloathing is Seal Skin, some few have Deer-Skin; they wear both the Seal and Deer-Skin with the Hair on, and dressed so as to be soft and pliable. They have a short Frock which reaches below their Hips, with Flaps that hang down about eight Inches before and behind, Sleeves that come to the Wrists, and a Hood or Capuchin which is of one Piece with the Frock, to put over the Head; the Frock is without any Slit or Opening upon the Breast or behind; there is a Border round the Face Part of the Capuchin; there is also a Border at the Bottom of the Frock and at the Hands, which Borders are of Pieces of the Skin of a lighter Colour than the rest of the Frock; the Frock also is made of Pieces, and in the putting them together they have Regard to the different Colours, setting them off to the best Advantage, but when made up they appear as one Piece. They have open-kneed Breeches of

E

the

July.

the same Materials as the Frock, made with a broad Waistband, and Borders round the Knees, sewing in the Seams by which the Borders are joined, short black Hairs doubled, making a black Streak; and sometimes two of these Streaks at about an Inch from each other; they also do the same in sewing on the Borders of the Frock; the Breeches have no Slit either before or behind, and there are Strings to the Waistband which draw it close round the Waist: They have Boots which reach the Knees, of Seal or Deer-Skin, the upper Part, but the Feet and Soles of Sea Horse Hide. They have Sandals of Seal Skin, or Sea-Horse Hide; that hath had the Hair taken off and afterwards been dressed in Oil. Their Shoes also are made of Seal-Skin but with the Hair on; all wear Boots, Sandals and Shoes without Heels, and the Shoes as well as the Boots and Sandals are sewed together (having Strength and Neatness) with the Sinews of Deer dried, and they sew their Cloaths with the same; they put at Times Skins of Willocks or Partridges as a Sock within their Boots or Shoes, with the Feathers inward or next their Foot: Their Gloves are made of oiled Skin, with no Finger-Pieces, only a Thumb; some with high Tops reaching almost to the Elbow, others without Tops not reaching the Wrist, these trimmed with a Slip of Fox, or some other Skin. They have also a Piece of Cloathing which is made of Bladders, that are first cut out and shaped, then every Piece joined to the other with a neat double Seam;

with a  
laces,  
s are  
ng a  
these  
they  
ers of  
either  
o the  
Vaist :  
f Seal  
et and  
als of  
ad the  
n Oil.  
t with  
Shoes  
as the  
aving  
f Deer  
h the  
cks or  
Shoes,  
Foot :  
ith no  
h high  
s with-  
mmed  
They  
ade of  
, then  
double  
Seam ;



Seam  
Open  
on ov  
by a  
it, bu  
a Slip  
the R  
with  
Wate

TI  
are a  
three  
than  
in na  
Piec  
toget  
knit  
the V  
Hair  
look  
Cafe  
only  
Part  
and  
cross  
a Sk  
Part  
Hoc  
roun  
to th

Seam, there is no Hood or Capuchin nor no <sup>July.</sup> Opening on the Breast or behind, so must be put on over the Head, being secured from tearing by a Border round the Neck, there are Arms to it, but reaches only to the Waist, and behind is a Slip of Whalebone sewed, as I imagine to tie to the Rim of their Canoe so it becomes one Piece with the Canoe, preventing in rough Weather all Water from getting in.

Their Canoes shap'd something like a Shuttle, are about eighteen Feet in Length, and near three Feet broad in the Middle, the Prow is wider than the Stern, but both as a Shuttle terminate in narrow Points : They are made of Ribs and Pieces which run fore and aft to hold such Ribs together ; the Ribs and Pieces are of Pine and knit together with Strips of Whalebone, and over the Whole is a Cover or Case of Skin which the Hair hath been cleared from and is well oiled, looking of the Colour of Parchment, and such Case is sewed together with strong Seams, leaving only one Opening in the Middle of the upper Part of the Canoe for a Person to get in to sit, and when in he fills it ; their Seat is not upon a cross Piece, but at the Bottom of the Canoe with a Skin usually under them ; when seated, two Parts of the Body will be in the Canoe, and a Hoop or Rim, of about three Inches in Height round the Opening they sit in, Reaches as high to them as the Pit of their Stomach.

July.

These Canoes they are dextrous in managing, and will paddle them at the rate of seven or eight Miles an Hour, looking when they paddle the same way they are going: They use no Motion with their Bodies, but lean Backwards, keeping themselves very steady, and: ~~the~~ move is their Arms and Shoulders, holding their Paddle with both Hands, their Paddle being double bladed, or two Paddles the Gripes or Handles sewed together, and the Blades one at each Extreme which they dip alternately, first, one on the one side, then the other on the other: The Paddle is about eight Feet long, and tipped with Bone; a small way just above the Blades of both Paddles, they make two Knobs which not only gives a better Hold by preventing the Hands from slipping, but hath a further Convenience, as the Water when they lifted the Paddle would otherwise run to their Hands, (very unpleasant at Times in such a Climate as this,) but by these Knobs it is formed into Drops and so mostly runs off.

As they paddle about the Ship, they call out *Shoot Cock*, which implies, *Whalebone*, a small Quantity of this was traded for Hatchets, Saws, Files, Knives, and Needles, which also were presented to them. The People of the Ship bartered their Knives and pieces of Iron Hoop for the Skin-Cloaths, the *Indians* being willing to dispose of any Thing which they can get an exchange for in Iron, so useful for fixing to the

Ends

Ends  
other  
use B

W  
get it  
then  
If the  
and c  
calling  
with  
rest v  
it, gi  
And a  
side th  
have t  
those t  
they v  
can ha  
*dian* n  
the Ca  
fat in,  
lying  
*Indian*

On  
Breech  
him se  
got hi  
the m  
they v

Ends of their Darts ; and Harpoons and for many July.  
other Purposes, for which otherwise they only  
use Bone.

Whatsoever they barter for, as soon as they  
get it they lick it with their Tongue, and  
then shout, which the other *Indians* join in.  
If there are several Canoes alongside the Ship,  
and one lying aside the other, all the *Indians*  
calling out to Trade, and you want to Trade  
with the *Indian* in the furthest Canoe, the  
rest will immediately, as soon as they perceive  
it, give Way to let that Canoe come nearer.  
And as they carry mostly their Whalebone within  
side their Canoes, and also the Cloaths which they  
have to dispose of, or to put on in the room of  
those they may part with from their Backs (though  
they will sell all and go Home naked, if they  
can have a Market) but as to get these, the *In-  
dian* must quit his Seat, kneel upon the Top of  
the Canoe, and take them out by the Hole he  
fat in, which he cannot do without another Canoe  
lying alongside to steady his, any one of the  
*Indians* will readily do this Office for him.

One of them who was offered a Barter for his  
Breeches, took another *Indian* and Canoe with  
him some Distance to steady his Canoe while he  
got his Breeches off, which act of Decency was  
the more extraordinary as under their Breeches  
they wear Skins which pass from their Hips  
up

July.

up between their Thighs, and are fastened behind.

There is on the Outside of their Canoes a Contrivance with a small Piece of Whalebone to hold their Harpoon, or Fishing Tackle, and near before the Opening they sit in, have two Strings across to tuck any thing under, and there sometimes shew a piece of Whalebone for Trade, some of them had on their Canoes behind them a Utensil made of a Piece of Whalebone rounded, about three Inches high, and eight Inches in Breadth, having a Cross of Wood at the Bottom, one End of which stood out for a Handle, and on this lay Seals Flesh which they eat raw, others had it lying on the Canoe; which taste at Times, however disagreeable to us, is yet useful to them, for if they can eat Seal, there is such a Plenty of them in all those Parts, that they may depend upon Food be their Voyage ever so long.

One of the *Indians* had a Piece of Board formed as the Flap of a Jocky Cap, about four Inches in the broadest Part, and eight Inches in Length or in that Part which he put to his Forehead, it being to assist his Sight upon his looking out, it was about an Inch thick, the Part next the Forehead, so as not to cut the Forehead when tied on, and was paired gradually so as to be thin at the outward Edge: This he put on to look out for three Boats of Women that were coming, with some Canoes, in which there were young  
Lads.

Lads.  
Ships to  
the Bo  
Shoutin  
much a  
per Co  
better,  
some n  
except  
having  
Hoods  
dren as  
of the  
quite v  
with V  
Horse

In  
thirty  
there  
the ot  
Girls  
Wom  
obser  
being  
thing  
and  
did n  
Thir  
Clea  
Fin  
a lon

Lads. Several of the Canoes went from the July. Ships to meet them, and returned with them, as the Boats came near, the Women made a great Shouting and Jumping; they are stout made, much as the Men, only seem more upon a Copper Complexion, their Features Softer, Hair better, Eyes black, some with their Hair tied, some not: Their Cloaths the same as the Men's, excepting that their Hoods are much larger, having also large Flaps before and behind; in their Hoods or Capuchins, they put their small Children as also in the Tops of their Boots which some of them have, being very large and reaching quite up to their Hips, they sett the Tops out with Whalebone, and the Boots are made of Sea-Horse Hide oyled.

In each of the Boats there were from about thirty to forty Persons, Women, Girls, and Lads, there seemed one Woman about the Age of fifty the others mostly thirty or under, and several Girls about twelve or fourteen, some of the Women having small Children. They did not observe that order in Trading as the Men, all being desirous both Women and Boys of any thing they saw offered for Bartering, Halloing and reaching out their Hands, which the Girls did not, but they shouted with the rest when any Thing was bartered. The Women trade their Cloaths as the Men; They had also Whale-Fin; and some Fox-Skins which they shewed a long Time before they came to the Ship, such

Skins

32  
July.

### A VOYAGE for the

Skins seasonably killed, would be extraordinary Furrs: The Boys traded small Arrows, Models of Bows and of Canoes. Strings of Beads were given to the Women, one to each, which they were extremely desirous of, when one expected to have a String, and it was given to another, she who was disappointed, would roll her Eyes, a Colour would immediately rise in her Face, and she would eagerly lick her Lips: Whatsoever they got, they did as the Men, immediately licked it.

The Boats they came in were in Shape nearest to an eccentric Oval, whose largest Diameter was about 20 Feet, whose shortest about 5, the Head rather sharper than the Stern, high sided, and rowed with two Sculls, much such as our Fishermen use, fastened to the Boats Gunnell with a Strip of Deer-Skin, the Boat is covered with oyled Skin, such as covers the Canoes, with Ribs of Pine of about the Breadth of four Fingers, at a Foot Distance the one from the other, and Rails Fore and Aft to confine the Ribs to which they are tied with Stripes of Whalebone, so are the Pieces of Pine, which run afore and aft, and also those that run cross the Bottom, and the Skin which covers the Boat seems to have no other Fastening than being sewed to the Rail, which is the Gunnell of the Boat. The Women row, one also steers with an Oar, and every Body stands, there being no Seat: These Boats move very slowly, and are called Luggage-Boats, by those who use *Hudson's* Streights, this  
seem

L  
seem to  
their F  
and H  
are em  
Time,  
or grea  
tenance  
as soon  
the W  
Coast,  
the La  
Streigh  
land. S  
ward h  
called  
rivatio  
Langu  
also au  
were t  
alludes  
raw F  
raw.  
many  
suppos  
ligious  
itself a  
know  
the Pr  
Count  
they v  
Tents  
Flesh

seem to be for the Convenience of transporting July.  
their Families and Provisions, as their Fishing  
and Hunting makes it necessary; in which they  
are employed all Summer, they procuring at that  
Time, as is supposed, their Winter Subsistence,  
or great Part of it, and also their present Main-  
tenance: It is probable they come into these Parts  
as soon as the Weather permits, and return with  
the Winter to the Southward, to the *Labrador*  
Coast, which reaches to Lat. 52. containing all  
the Lands between *Hudson's* Streights, and the  
Streights of *Bell-Isle*, at the Back of *Newfound-*  
*land*. Some of these *Indians* who live to the South-  
ward have fair, others red Hair: They are all  
called *Eskemaux*, which is a Word of Indian De-  
rivation, from the *Abenaguies* Language, or the  
Language of those *New England* Indians, who  
also are called *Eastern* Indians, and probably  
were their Neighbours formerly; which Word  
alludes to a Custom mentioned, that of eating  
raw Flesh, and signifies those who eat what is  
raw. This Opinion was carried so far, that  
many believed they never did otherwise, and  
supposed that they made no Fires, out of a Re-  
ligious Veneration, which they had for Fire  
itself as a Deity. But the Contrary is now well  
known. The Custom of eating raw Flesh was  
the Produce of Necessity, for, when hunting, the  
Country could afford them no Fuel to dress it,  
they were also at a great Distance from their  
Tents; and the then Use of it might make raw  
Flesh not quite disagreeable to them, at some

34  
July.

### A VOYAGE for the

other Times when Hungry: But, when at their Tents, they make a Fire of Sea-Weed dried (as hath been observed of those *Eskemaux* to the Westward of the *Bay*) and dress their Meat, preferring the Meat so dressed to their Eating it raw. It is not above nine or ten Years since they have been seen in the Streights in such Numbers, and which probably is upon the account of Trading with the Ships; they seem to love Society for their Habitations, are never single, but consist of a Number of Tents pitched near one another. If we consider the Age, both of the Men and Women who were alongside the Ship, most of them People in the Prime of Life, we may suppose that these only come abroad on these Expeditions to hunt, and the antient People stay at Home. As to their Religion and Customs, little Account can be given; their Language not being understood, no one now goes ashore amongst them, and they are only seen by those in the *Hudson's-Bay* Ships, once in twelve Months, for a few Hours on their Outward-bound Passage, and it is seldom they are seen when the Ships Return; but when they are, it is more to the Southward off *Mansell's* Island, tho' there is no one of the Islands from which they have not come off to Trade.

In their Trading they are sufficiently Sharp, you shew them what you will Barter, and then you take from them what you intend to Truck, but they are for giving as little as they can, being

ing ve  
their fi  
theirs  
your C  
if the  
theirs.

Mr  
peditic  
furling  
*Savag*  
upon  
saw a  
barkin  
their  
any P  
had b  
noes,  
afterw  
went  
to th  
Cano  
whon  
Signs  
but v  
them  
Triff  
and  
foun  
with  
for t  
foun

ing very unwilling to make any Additions to their first Offer; when you have got as much of theirs (which you lay in a Heap) as you want for your Goods. you then give them your Truck, if they do not accept it, you then return them theirs.

Mr. *Baffyne* in his Account of Mr. *Bylot's* Expedition in 1615, tells us, that while they were furling their Sails on coming to an Anchor off of *Savage* Isles, (and which Isles took their Name upon the following Occasion) they heard and saw a great Company of Dogs, howling and barking, which appearing strange, they sent their Boat near Shore to see if they could discern any People, the Boat returned, and those who had been in the Boat said there were Tents, Canoes, and Dogs, but for People they saw none; afterwards Mr. *Baffyne* and seven others armed, went to the Tents, but found Nobody, marched to the Top of the Hill, and from thence saw a Canoe which had about fourteen People in it, whom they called to in *Greenlandish*, and made Signs of Friendship. They did the like to him, but were fearful of him, and he, not trusting them, also, made Signs of a Knife and other Trifles, which he left upon the Top of a Hill, and returned to the Tents again, where they found to the Number of 30 or 40 Whale-fins, with a few Seal-Skins, which they took, leaving for them, Knives, Beads, and Counters. They found a Place where there were the Images of

July.

Men, and one Image of a Woman, which Mr. *Baffyne* brought away with him.

Amongst these Tents, being five in Number, all covered with Seal-Skins, were running twenty-five or thirty Dogs, the most of them muzzled, they were of a mungril Mastiff Breed, being of a brindle black Colour, looking almost like Wolves; these Dogs they use to draw their Sleds.

*Monck* in his Expedition in the Year 1619, met with the *Eskemaux* on an Island on the North Shore, of the Streights, which is neither Named nor the Latitude or Longitude of it given but, on the first Day they went Ashore, they perceived that there were Inhabitants, on the second they saw a Company of them, who all hid their Arms behind a Rock near to which they then were, and afterwards saluted the *Danes*, which the *Danes* returned, the *Eskemaux* cautiously keeping between the *Danes* and their Arms; which nevertheless the *Danes* got too, and the *Eskemaux* finding their Arms taken were greatly perplexed, and by Signs intreated the *Danes* to restore them, expressing also that they had no other Way to subsist but by Hunting, in which they made Use of these Arms, offering them their Cloaths in Restitution; this moved the *Danes* Compassion, the Arms were restored, and the *Eskemaux* shewed their Sense of the Kindness by falling on their Knees; the *Danes* then presented them.

them v  
which  
Return  
That M  
to retu  
thing  
a Strin  
They  
Parts,  
there,  
to proo

Abc  
half a  
Breeze  
fant,  
Easter

At  
lesser a  
dle-Ba  
the gr  
Salva  
within  
they a  
them.  
is sup  
Nivea  
to cor  
from  
Quan  
with

them with Knives, Toys and Looking-glasses, July. which they were much taken with, and they in Return gave a Quantity of dry Fowl and Fish. That Night the *Danes* sailed, but were forced to return the next Day, when they found every thing they had presented them with hung with a String on the Shore, and the *Eskemaux* gone. They saw several Times afterwards in other Parts, Marks of their being, or having been there, but could not attain a Sight of them. But to proceed on our own Voyage.

About Night there sprung up a light Breeze at half an Hour after the *Eskemaux* left us, this Breeze continued, the Weather warm and pleasant, which we attributed to the Wind being Easterly; and our being clear of Ice.

At Noon July 12th, saw four Islands, three 12th. lesser and one larger; the large Island called *Saddle-Back* Island, the largest of the other three, the great *Salvage* Isle; the other two the lesser *Salvage* Isles, and, one of these Islands lying within the Inlet much further than the rest, they are not all seen until you are abreast of them. This Inlet opens to the Northward, and is supposed also to run on the Back of *Terra Nivea*, into *Mistake-Bay*, and by *Lumley's* Inlet to communicate with the Ocean, there proceed from it strong Currents which bring down great Quantities of Ice at Times, and these encountering with the Ice and Currents down the Streights cause

July.

cause a great Jumbling and Confusion among the Ice; when you are passed these Islands, you are supposed to have passed the most dangerous Part of the Streights, with respect to the Ice. East of these Islands is the Shore of *Terra Nivea*, to the Westward a high Bluff Land; the Eastermost Point of which is now called *Salvage-Point*. Draughts of these Lands or of any others in or about the Streights it is scarce possible to make; because they are almost at all Times covered with light Fogs; and a true Draught, when made, would be uselefs, as the Lands on account of those Fogs shew very seldom or ever as they really are, but at all Times different.

13th.

The pleasant warm Weather continued, the Evening, that Night, and Part of the next Morning, when, as well as on the Evening before, there appeared several Fog-Banks in the Horizon. About six in the Morning saw a large Ledge of Ice, (it grew cold and we had Rain) hearing the Rut of Water through it though at a League Distance; we tacked and avoided it. The Weather proved cloudy and small Rain, the whole Day excepting about two Hours at Noon, at two in the Afternoon met with low flat Islands of Ice, of a lightish blue Colour, thick covered with Snow, the Surface of the Ice very uneven much resembling Heaps of Stone at a Quarry's Mouth; which Ice we continued to traverse all that Afternoon and the Night, seeing about five that Evening the Land  
off

off of  
Mornin  
Ice) sav  
and wit  
The W  
changi  
Rain o  
Weath  
fourtee  
very C  
and fre  
Night  
the Co  
and in  
had be  
Noon  
account  
there b  
what t  
*Fleake*  
" shal  
" the  
" Acr  
" of t  
" 2 o  
" mor  
Noon  
with a  
at W  
from t  
the La  
South

off of *Hopes Advance*. About seven the next July. Morning *July* the 14th, (still traversing the 14th. Ice) saw the South Shore again, very high Rock and with a great Quantity of Ice settled under it. The Wind about eight at Night of the thirteenth changing from N. N. E. to N. W. by N. the Rain ceased, it continuing cloudy with the Weather Chill, and at ten the Morning of the fourteenth had a thick Fog, when it also became very Cold; at eleven we got into a clear Sea, and free from Ice, having a fair Afternoon, and Night with a Continuance or rather Increase of the Cold the Wind being N. N. W. and N. W. and in the Night a small Dew fell: This Ice we had been traversing the thirteenth, and to the Noon of the fourteenth (sometimes Tacking on account of the Ice being close, and at other Times there being room to pass, keeping our Course) is what the former Discoverers called *Mashed* or *Fleaked* Ice; of which Captain *Fox* says, " you shall have numbers of Islands infinite, some of the Quantity of a Rood, others a Perch, or an Acre, some two Acres, but the greater Part of these Islands are small, and about a Foot or 2 or more above the Water, and 8 or 10 or more under the Water." We saw the Land the 15th. Noon of the fifteenth (clear Sun-shiny Weather with an Alteration to Warm, and a light Breeze at W. S. W.) The Land of the North Shore from the N. E. by N. Easterly to the S. E.  $\frac{1}{2}$  S. the Land of the South Shore from the W. by S. Southerly to the S. W  $\frac{1}{2}$  S. a long Ridge of Land, covered

\* North-West, *Fox*. P. 186.

July.

covered with large Spits of Snow, at about four Leagues Distance, and the North Shore about nine Leagues, on which we also saw some Snow lying; both Shores are very high, and consist of a brown barren Rock; in the Land to the Northward several Inlets, and several Islands off Shore, most of which in Time have received Appellations, by the former Discoverers more out of Complement to their Employers, than any Use that could be collected from their being so named, therefore those who have gone this Voyage after having neglected to apply these Names to the several Islands. It is not now known to which of the Islands the Names properly belong. Captain *McCor* fired several Times in the Morning in Hopes of another Visit from the *Eskem* \*x. Saw to-day a Number of Sea-Spiders, the Whales Food, too well known from the many Describers to need any Description here. Though we had from the fourteenth at Noon, to the sixteenth, clear pleasant Weather, the Sea Calm, with light Breezes of Wind: it may not be to these Circumstances that we must intirely attribute our Compass, not Traversing without stirring the Box with the Hand or a wooden Rod. At Noon of the sixteenth, it grew hazy and at one we began to pass amongst Ice which seemed very rotten, the Snow looking of a grey Colour upon it; continue passing Ice, which at six grows much thicker, and meeting with a Range of Ice, which had Spots of Water within it, and the Water to be seen, beyond it we enter

16th.

and

and pu  
the lat  
Dimer  
tioned  
not in  
Piece  
at eigh  
four o  
day m  
bearing  
Leagu  
Moun  
and is  
them o  
tain *F*  
Main  
is nam  
bluff  
Cape,  
to the

\* To  
for the  
as possib  
the Ice,  
from off  
Ice-Hou  
Feet lon  
chip a H  
the other  
of Iron R  
which lie  
is done  
might o  
one Ice-  
some fro  
the Piece

and push through: This Ice and that we saw all July. the latter Part of the Afternoon, far exceeded in Dimensions the usual fleaked Ice before mentioned, there being flat Pieces whose Surface were not in Contents less than forty Acres, and to a Piece the Surface about six Acres we grappled \* at eight. Saw this Morning a Number of Seals, four or five together, and this Day and Yesterday more than at any Time before; Cape *Charles* bearing South of us in the Evening, distant five Leagues, which was first named by Mr. *Hudson*, Mount *Charles*, described as Part of the Main, and is so expressed in all the old Charts, but in them called Cape *Charles*; even called by Captain *Fox Prince Charles's* Cape on the South Main; now known to be Part of an Island which is named the Island of *Charles*, having a high bluff Rocky Land to the N. E. which is the Cape, or *Cape Charles*; the Island running low to the Westward.

\* To grapple we stood, having but a small Sail out, directly for the Middle of the Piece, and came to it as slow and easie as possible, lowering our Top-sail-Yards: When we touched the Ice, the Lieutenant with two Hands immediately stepping from off the Ship's Head upon the Ice; one Hand with an Ice-Hook, which is an Iron shaped like an S. of about three Feet long, of good Strength, the Lieutenant with an Ax to chip a Hole in the Ice to fix one End of the Ice-Hook in, and the other Hand with a Rope which hath a Thimble, or bit of Iron Ring at the End, to put over that turn of the Ice-Hook which lies up; and the other End of the Rope is Aboard. This is done with all possible Agility to prevent the Trouble that might otherwise happen, by the Ship's swinging off. When one Ice-Hook is fixed, they carry out another Astern, and some from the Midships, confining the Ship to lie Alongside the Piece of Ice, as quietly and closely as if at a Key-Side.

July.

The Piece of Ice we grappled to had a Pond upon it (as many Pieces have) the Water tho' produced from the melted Snow, is extreme good and fit for all Uses. We took the Opportunity of filling such Water-Casks as were empty, but not from any Necessity that we were under for want of Water, or being any ways short of it. These Ponds in Time, work through the Piece to the Sea-Water, which you readily perceive upon tasting, by the Water being Brackish, and is then unfit for Use. These Ponds by thus working through, greatly contribute to the Dissolution of the Ice.

17th.

Soon after Grappling, the Ice closed round us for some Leagues, which in the Morning was some-what parted; in the Afternoon the Water made a great Rut, as though passing through an Arch, being the Flood-Tide with a strong Wind which caused the Ice to separate more than it had done in the Morning, but the Wind being too scant, and blowing too fresh for our making any Way: It was to no Purpose to ungrapple.

We were warmer that Evening we grappled and the next Day, though surrounded by the Ice, than we had been at any Time since the first of July; the Weather dark and hazy.

From N. W. away to S. the Horizon looked about seven in the Evening of the seventeenth,  
extremely

extrem  
ning fr  
eight t  
what,  
Flashes  
before  
the Li  
also bl  
Mornin  
round t  
at one  
long a  
there c

Exce  
Sea was  
which v  
was al  
being V  
we coul  
to get  
Island w  
round u  
Body of  
upon u  
thawed i  
and bef  
the Ship  
the *Dob*  
Hooks.

At S  
Distant

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

43

extremely black, afterwards Thunder and Light- July.  
ning from that Quarter with some Rain, about  
eight that Part of the Horizon cleared some-  
what, appearing of a red fiery Colour, and the  
Flashes of Lightning seemed to be larger than  
before; the Thunder died off by twelve, but  
the Lightning then at E. by S. continued; it  
also blowed hard with Rain. By three in the  
Morning of the eighteenth, the Lightning was round to N. and N. E. Lightning in both Points  
at one and the same point of Time, the Flashes  
long and great: the Wind then fell little, and  
there came on a thick wet Fog.

Excepting a few Islands, at a small Distance the  
Sea was clear of Ice to the N. and W. The Ice  
which was nearer, though it surrounded the Ship,  
was also much separated, but from the Wind  
being W. by N. and little, afterwards a Calm,  
we could not press through the Ice that was near  
to get into such clear Sea; driving with the  
Island we were grappled to S. E. as did the Ice  
round us; seeming to approach a large close  
Body of Ice, and to have another coming down  
upon us. The Island we were so fast too was  
thawed in many Places, the Ponds soaked through,  
and before six parted in three Pieces, setting  
the Ship loose, but she was hauled alongside  
the *Dobbs*, our People first taking in the Ice-  
Hooks.

At Seven (Cape *Charles* bearing S. W. by S.  
Distant about five Leagues from our having  
drove

July.

drove considerably with the Ice) we loosed with the Wind, at W. by S. and kept working to the Windward amongst Ice, with a N. W. Course until ten, when there was a fall of Sleet; and it becoming hazy Weather with a hard Gale of Wind at N. Both Captains agreed to Grapple; before Noon Snow and Rain, with quite a Storm of Wind at N.

The Ship being to the Windward of the Ice, as was also the *Dobbs*, (and the Ice not setting round with them as is usual, and laying them to Leeward) they jogged much, beating their Sides against the Ice: The Piece broke about two in the Afternoon, the Hooks held it together some little Time; afterwards, it came into so many Pieces, that they were forced to cast the Ships off; before the breaking of the Ice, many Pieces drove down upon us, which were set off with the Ice-Poles, one very large and heavy Piece, threatening to unlift or damage the Rudder. \*

\* From the Accident of the Ice breaking, might be seen the Service of the small Boats (which are from eleven to fourteen Feet in Length) carried by Ships which go into these Streights; they are convenient for carrying out Ropes, fetching the Hooks off the Ice, and the People off the Ice, gone out to get such Hooks, but prevented perhaps from returning by the Piece they were on parting and swimming away; the Size of the Boats making them Portable so as they can be heighted upon a Piece of Ice if another Piece is driving down upon it, or carried over a Piece when there is not Room for passing between two Pieces, which other Boats from their Size are too Cumberfome for, and as they cannot be lifted about, are liable every Minute to be staved by some of the Pieces of Ice, which swim close and near each other when the Ice is first separated, this Boat also at other Times hanging on the Quarter is ready to lower at Sea, upon any Accident which makes it Necessary for to lower a Boat.

Captain

Captain *Moor* cast off first, drove just clear July. of us, and the same Weather continuing made fast to another Piece, which not being sufficient to hold both Ships, we grappled to an Island at small Distance, but the *Dobbs* driveing with the Ice to the Leeward, the *California* ahead, were two Miles distant in the Morning; nor was it possible to cast off to get nearer each other, when they perceived their being fet with the Ice contrary Ways: It becoming soon after the Ship's grappling a close Body of Ice, with only small Spots of Water here and there, for Leagues round, and farther than the Eye could carry from the Mast-head; the same on all Sides; a melancholy Prospect was it not known that in a few Hours the whole Scene might change. Such Circumstances as those we have last related, lead Mr. *Hudson* into Despair, fearing he never should get out of, but perish amongst the Ice<sup>a</sup>

“ The Storm ceasing (says *Pricket* who gives an Account of Mr. *Hudson's* Voyage) we stood out of the Ice, where we saw any clear Sea to go to, which was sometime more and sometimes less. Our Course was as the Ice did lie, sometimes to the North, then to the North-West, and then to the West, and to the South-West, but still inclosed with Ice, Which when our Master saw, he made his Course to the South, thinking to clear himself of the Ice that Way, but the more he

<sup>a</sup> *Purchafe's Pilgrims*, Lib. 3 Chap. 17. P. 598.

“ strove,

d with  
ng to  
Course  
d it be-  
Wind  
e; be-  
Storm

he Ice,  
fetting  
hem to  
ir Sides  
two in  
er some  
o many  
e Ships  
many  
e fet off  
heavy  
ge the

at be seen  
n to four-  
into these  
es, fetch-  
Ice, gone  
returning  
way; the  
ey can be  
eing down  
Room for  
their Size  
about, are  
ces of Ice,  
Ice is first  
ng on the  
ent which

Captain

July.

“ strove, the worse he was, and the more inclosed, until he could go no further. Here our Master was in Despair, and (as he told this Pricket after) he thought he never should have got out of the Ice but there have perished.”

The Islands of Ice which we saw for these several Days past, as to Colour, they were of a light Blue, mostly covered with a thick Snow, swimming a small height above the Water, and upon their Surface there were Pieces of Ice of a thousand various forms; and when these Islands (which separated, were mostly large, few of them less than three Acres) came to close and join, these different Forms of the Ice on the Surface, and which you would see for Leagues together, made a very romantick Appearance. The Weather though dry altered to be very Cold, the Wind which lessened in the Night, now the next Morning, *July* the 19th about six, blowed hard at N. and the Sea which over-night was so thick with Ice as nothing else could be seen: By eight this Morning was so cleared by the Tide and Current that we could get on our Way, and without Difficulty run Down to Captain Moor, who also got on his Way. From eight it set on Raining, continuing most of the Day, and until twelve at Night, with hazy Weather, the Wind less. In the afternoon we saw a Part of the South Main through the Haze, with Snow upon it, very high hilly Rocks, the Southermost Part W. by S. with a Ledge of Ice lying before it,  
and

and C.  
Leagu  
the Ice  
to S. 1  
the N  
the N  
frequ  
any B  
Rain a  
Ice, an  
Signal  
son th  
was co

The  
until th  
N. bu  
At six  
bearing  
since th  
then b  
rest of  
the Sh  
cleared  
of such  
were f  
Morni

At t  
the Ice  
that Ni  
untill t

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

47

and Cape *Charles* N. W. by W.  $\frac{1}{2}$  W. five or six July Leagues. Therefore reckoned that while amongst the Ice, the Ship had been set about five Leagues to S. E. We proceeded all Night, and until the Noon of the next Day which was much as <sup>20.h.</sup> the Night before, cold, rainy, dirty Weather, frequently seeing Ice, but keeping clear from any Body of it. But in the Afternoon then less Rain and hazy with little Wind, passed amongst Ice, and at six in the Evening upon Captain *Moor's* Signal grappled; Captain *Moor* giving for a Reason that the Wind was scanting and a light Fog was come on.

The Ice was pretty close about us all the Night until the Morning of the 21<sup>st</sup>, and fresh Wind at <sup>21<sup>st</sup>.</sup> N. but the Weather clear and hazy alternately. At six in the Morning of the 21<sup>st</sup>, Cape *Charles* bearing S. five Leagues, we had got no Ground since the sixteenth in the Evening, Cape *Charles* then bearing the same; close hazy Weather the rest of the Day, and the Haze thick upon the the Shore until five in the Afternoon, when it cleared; and then we were within two Leagues of such Cape, having drove with the Island we were fast too, three Leagues since six that Morning.

At ten in the Evening we ungrappled from the Ice, were soon in a clear Sea, clear Weather that Night and the Morning of the twenty-second <sup>22<sup>d</sup>.</sup> untill ten, then foggy with a dark hazy After-  
Noon

July.

Noon, cold, but a pleasant Gale of Wind, at E. S. E. passing much Ice at the Time, and run during the whole Afternoon by a prodigious Body of flat level Ice, to Southward, which was continual without Break, and seemed to stretch quite to the Shore, such as the *Dutch* call a Wall of Ice.

In the Evening of the twenty-second, the Ice we past amongst swam much closer, or the Pieces nearer each other, then what we had before met with in the Day, and two Pieces which we passed between, immediately after joined, and hindered the *Dobbs* from passing; upon which we stood towards her, then having an Opening; but there being a thick Fog, and the Ice coming down very fast, it was thought most adviseable to grapple; the Fog cleared about ten, hazy from that Time to four, when the Ice surrounded us on all Sides. Clear Weather until seven, when the Ice was set away by the Currents, as the Day before; with little Wind at S. S. E.

23d.

At eight that Morning *July* the 23d, the Island of *Salisbury* bore N. distant seven Leagues, high and rocky like the North and South Shore of the Streights, of an Oblong form lying in Latitude 63. 30. and Longitude 73. W. first discovered by Mr. *Hudson*, who says in his Account, “<sup>a</sup> The “ second Day of *August* we had Sight of a fair

<sup>a</sup> *Furche's Pil.* Lib. 3. Chap. 17. P. 597.

“ Head-

“ Head-Land on the Northern Shore, six July.  
“ Leagues off, which I called *Salisbury's* Fore-  
“ land:” After the Rt. Hon. and not to be  
forgotten (as Capt. *Fox* expresses himself) ROBERT  
CECILL, Earl of *Salisbury* (in the Year 1610)  
Lord High Treasurer of *England*. *Pricket* in his  
Account of *Hudson's* Voyage says, “ To the  
“ North and beyond this, that is, Cape *Charles*,  
“ lies an Island, that to the East hath a fair Head,  
“ and beyond it to the West other broken Land,  
“ which maketh a Bay within, and a good Road  
“ may be found there for Ships; our Master  
“ named the first Cape *Salisbury*.” Captain *Fox*,  
who was within four Miles, says it is high Land  
but not clifted. It is now discovered there are  
two Islands, the one small to the South-East-  
ward of the other, which is termed Cape *Salisbury*;  
and the larger Island is the Island of *Salisbury*;  
there is also another small Island to the North-  
ward of *Salisbury* Island. We were at no Time  
nearer than seven Leagues.

Ungrappling at eleven, the Ice was so parted  
that with the Assistance of the Wind right aft, we  
could force through: Enjoying fine Weather  
with Sunshine, also warm. At four could pass  
the Ice without almost altering the Helm; but  
having a great Wall of Ice on the Weather-Bow.  
It was observable of these small Islands we passed  
amongst, that they were not set by the Current  
any Way, but remained in one Place; the Water  
as calm as in a Mill-Pool, only now and then

H

one

“ Head-

July.

one of these small Islands would suddenly shoot swiftly forward a hundred Yards, and then return almost with an equal Agility to the Spot it went from, and there remain still, and this with little Perturbation of the Water.

The Current at eight at Night of the 23d (tho' the Surface of the Water was calm and smooth) set both Ships so strongly on a Piece of Ice, that they were forced to grapple, and then *Salisbury* bore N. N. W. eight Leagues, further distant than in the Morning, or we were more to the Southward and Eastward than in the Morning. The Ice, while we were forcing through, and the Time we had grappled to it, from two to four in the Afternoon, having set with us to the Southward, more than we could recover between four in the Afternoon, and eight in the Evening; though we steered a West Course, and seemingly went ahead: All the Advantage received, we were nearer a clear Sea, and out of the thicker Part of the Ice. The Night was clear and pleasant, so the Morning of the twenty-fourth, and the Ice which had closed round us opened to N. W. Cape *Charles* S. E. eight or nine Leagues. At ten cast off, and afterwards saw a Whale of about thirty Feet in Length, contrary to the usual Observation of their not being in *Hudson's* Streights, excepting just at the Entrance, was of the right Whalebone Kind; steered from the Ship, and dived under a large Wall of Ice to the Leeward. Cape *Charles* then bore

S.  $\frac{1}{2}$  E.

24th.

S.  $\frac{1}{2}$  E.  
eight

Sail  
Ice, in  
small I  
in the  
large  
soon b  
us, wh  
first d  
sently  
the Im  
over;  
came c  
the Ice  
the Ho  
the Ice  
the W  
the Sh  
gave a  
Captain  
Hours  
the tw  
distant  
the Sh  
ing inf  
This I  
fifteen  
fresh V

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

51

S.  $\frac{1}{2}$  E. nine or ten Leagues. *Salisbury* N. N. W. July.  
eight or nine Leagues.

Sailed all the Morning between two Bodies of Ice, in a Channell of about a League wide, some small Islands of Ice swimming by us, so till three in the Afternoon, when we grappled to a very large Body that reached for Miles. The Tide soon bringing down another Body of Ice towards us, which, though a very large Body, would first drive one Way with great Swiftnes, presently stop, then return; the smaller Pieces with the Impulse of the Water tumbling over and over; at half an Hour after twelve a Part of it<sup>25th.</sup> came down to the Ship, chucked her close up to the Ice she was fast to; breaking away one of the Hook-Ropes, and breaking also the Part of the Ice she was fast too in several Pieces. At six the Water had opened the Ice just about where the Ship lay, so as to form a small Bay, which gave an Opportunity to grapple to a fresh Piece, Captain *Moor* continuing as he was; and in six Hours the Current brought the Ice so in between the two Ships, that they were more than a Mile distant from each other; all Endeavours to get the Ships nearer were Ineffectual: The Ice being inseparable, as it was very little decayed. This Ice was white, quite to the Bottom, about fifteen Feet in Depth. It was the Ice out of some fresh Water River.

July.

Three of the Ship's Company tempted by the Weather. (which continued warm and pleasant with Sun-shine) walked over the Ice in the Afternoon to the *Dobbs*, then at the same Distance as at Noon, more than a Mile off, not meeting with above three Openings or Splittings in the Ice, neither of which were above a Foot broad. But they had not been Aboard the *Dobbs* half an Hour before the Ice was opened by the Tide, forming an infinite Number of Islands, and so wide a Channel between the two Ships, in the very Part just before walked over, that the *Dobbs* failed down to join the *California*: Which Relation is made solely with an Intent to precaution others.

25th.

In the Night, *July* the 25th, a large Piece of Ice drove alongside Captain *Moor*, six Fathom and a half in Depth, with a Tong. What is called a Tong is a sharp-pointed Piece, which projects from the other Parts, is very hard, and usually appears of a light Blue, (which Tong ran under his Ship, and by lifting her, brought her almost on her Careen, or almost laid her abroad-side.) It is from these Tonges, (which from their being under Water are more concealed, and from their Hardness if touched, are capable of piercing a Ship under her Bends, so foundering her) that proceeds the greatest Danger amongst the Ice. They should be carefully look'd for, and at all Times avoided.

The

The  
in Ice;  
itself, v  
only ch  
in the  
Lightn  
versing  
of the  
again,  
cessity  
Morni  
Leagu  
out th  
largest  
Streigh  
upon  
some A  
overse  
The E  
with a  
to twe

TH  
Noon  
Ship f  
it was  
Peopl  
of Ice  
their  
break  
chets.

July.

The Morning of the 26th, we were inclosed 26th. in Ice; it was cloudy, the Sun seldom shewing itself, with little Wind at N. N. W. the Weather only chill; at Noon had a small Shower of Rain; in the Afternoon about two, some Thunder and Lightning, when we were ungrappled, traversing the Ice which was cleared from the Head of the Ship with Handspikes; at five grappled again, but to two different Pieces through Necessity; which caused us to be separated in the Morning of the twenty-seventh, about half a League. The Ice inclosing us on all Sides without the least Water to be seen, and one of the largest Pieces of Ice seen since Entering the Streights, being as high as our Deck, sat close upon our Bow, not without putting us under some Apprehensions, for fear the Piece would overset, or break, and so do the Ship a Damage. The Evening was pleasant, but the Night cloudy with a fresh Gale at W. S. W. and from eleven to twelve Rain.

The Morning of the 27th was cloudy, so till 27th. Noon; had heighthed some Sail to press the Ship forward in the Ice, which was so close that it was to little Purpose. And in the Afternoon the People were employ'd, in wrenching the Pieces of Ice asunder with Handspikes, which stuck with their Ends jammed the one under another, they breaking off also the Points of the Ice with Hatchets, and going out with Warps ahead to tow,  
all

July. all with less Success than their Labour seemed to deserve; the Ice closing very fast, and obliging us to grapple again at nine. What added to their Difficulties, it rained hard, all the Time, and fell very cold, which Weather continued until twelve, the Wind varying from W. S. W. to S. W. by S. and W. about one N. W. then a Fog, and the Ice separating so much that both Ships drove a-pace to Eastward, with the Islands they were fastened to, and Captain *Moor* by two was within half a Mile of us, firing a Gun, a Signal in the Fog, to know where we were; the Signal was answered, and the *Dobbs* soon after seen, as the Fog cleared a little, which it continued to do and thicken until four, then cleared intirely. But, the Wind being contrary still N. W. a fresh Gale, could not ungrapple. Until eight very cold Weather, such as we had not felt; between eight and twelve some what warmer and dry. Between four and six in the Morning the Ice had inclosed us again, but at two in the afternoon opened, so that we cast off and pressed through it. Wind about W. Captain *Moor* also got under Way and, making an Angle with our Course, met us; the Ice grew more and more open until six, when we got into a clear Sea, *Cape Charles*, S. eight or nine Leagues.

In the Afternoon had some Sun-shine, but at five Rain and Wind, at W. S. W. and squally at six. At eight Rain, so again at ten, and hazy with Rain at Times until twelve, the Ship keeping

ing un  
and t  
Ice. T  
till five  
Weath  
for a fr  
dark  
round t  
and, be  
came c  
four,  
eight,  
Wind  
Night,  
tacking

Such  
Night  
of the t  
blowing  
about  
Squalls  
cold;  
fame W  
Wind  
hazy an  
Mornin  
S. S. v  
after ve  
til six i  
We sav  
Time,

ing under Sail, sometimes amongst sailing Ice, July. and tacking, to avoid the large Bodies of Ice. The Haze, with Rain at Times, continued till five, the Morning of the 29th, then clearer 29th. Weather, but a wet Fog at six, which continued for a small Time. The Morning was cloudy and dark until eleven, then some Sun, the Wind round to N. W. the Sun shot in soon after twelve, and, before two, the Wind W. by S. the Fog came on, and was repeatedly on and off until four, very cold. Then cloudy Weather until eight, afterwards Hail with Rain, until twelve. Wind N. N. W. most Part of this Day and Night, the 29th of July, were in a clear Sea; tacking, when near a Body of Ice.

Such Weather, as was in the Evening and Night of the twenty-ninth, continued to the Noon of the thirtieth, with the Addition of the Wind 30th. blowing fresher, at N. W. and of the Rain, about six in the Morning, coming in hard Squalls. The Noon was fair with Sun-shine, but cold; seeing *Salisbury* bearing N. N. E. the same Weather lasted until eight, then cloudy; the Wind falling, it became almost calm at ten; hazy and cloudy, from that time to eight in the Morning, July the 31st, with light Winds, at 31st. S. S. W. when the Sun broke out, but was soon after veiled with a wet Fog, which continued until six in the Evening; then clearer Weather. We saw the Island of *Salisbury*, and, at the same Time, the Island of *Nottingham*, the West End of

July.

of *Nottingham*, in Sight N. W.  $\frac{1}{2}$  W. the East End N. E. distant each Point about four Leagues; and on Soundinghad 65 Fathom, light-coloured owfy Ground. This Island was so named, according to Captain *Fox*, by Mr. *Hudson*, after the Honourable Lord *Charles Howard*, Earl of *Nottingham*, in 1610, Lord High Admiral of *England*. The Island to the Westward appeared low and flat; from which there is a gradual Rise until it becomes high; this Height continues near two Thirds of the Length of the Island, and then from such a Height there is a Descent to the East Part of the Island, which East Part is not so low as what the West part is; the Lat. is  $63^{\circ} 21''$ . Long  $77^{\circ} 40'$ . W. <sup>a</sup> Upon the North-West Side of *Nottingham* Island, there are two or three small Isles, which lie off from the greater, which make very good Harbours about this Isle; as Mr. *Bylot* experienced, having so much foul Weather, and many Storms, from the 19th to the 26th of *July*, that he staid there. There are also many small lone Isles to the S. Point of the Island; without which, Mr. *Baffyne* observes, in the Account of Mr. *Bylot's* Expedition, there would have been a fit Place to have anchored, to have found out the true Set of the Tide: but the Master, Mr. *Bylot*, who had been in the three Expeditions which preceded, viz. in *Hudson's*, Sir *Thomas Button's*, and *Gibbon's*, being desirous to come to the same Place, where

<sup>a</sup> *Purchase's Pil. Lib. iii. Chap. 17 P. 597.*

he

he had rode before, in the Expedition of Sir July. *Thomas Button*, stood along by this Isle to the Westward, and came to an Anchor in the Eddy of these broken Grounds, where the Ship rode at no Certainty of the Tide; and on the twenty-seventh in the Morning, it being foul Weather, the Anchor would not hold in eight Fathom; but they were drove into deeper Water, and forced to fet Sail.

The Weather continued clear until twelve at Night of the 31<sup>st</sup>, then little Wind at S. and a Fog, which Fog wetted extremely, lasted until four, and then small Rain, and very cold. Hazy until after five, the Wind W. having been at two, W. by N. at four W. by S. then clearer until ten, when again foggy, but the Sun sometimes appearing through it; at twelve the Fog thick and very wet, continuing so until two, the Wind N. W. by W. then clearing we saw *Nottingham*, the Middle N. E. the W. End N. by E. the E. End E. by N. within less than four Leagues, not having, on the Western Side at least, so barren a Look as *Terra Nivea*, or *Resolution*, seeming to have several grassy Spots, with but little Snow lying on it; it consists of Chains or Ridges of Hills, one within another, and shews to be broad, the Middle of the Island projecting much forwarder, and so more to the Southward than the Extremes; which explains what Mr. *Baffyne* means by the South Point of this Island mentioned before.

August.  
1<sup>st</sup>.

August.

The clear Weather continuing, saw *Diggs's* Island, as also the South Shore, first discovered by Mr. *Hudson*; and the Island named by him after Sir *Dudley Diggs*, who, as well as his Father, had been a great Promoter of these Discoveries; upon this Island the *Eskemaux* were first met with, when the Mutineers, who had exposed: Mr. *Hudson*, returned hither with the Ship, <sup>a</sup> “ The Boat then went to *Diggs's* Cape, “ (says Mr. *Pricket* in his Account of *Hudson's* “ Voyage) directly for the Place where the Fowl “ breed (Willocks) where they saw seven Boats “ come about the Eastern Point towards them; “ but, when the Salvages saw their Boat, they “ drew their lesser Boats into their bigger, which “ when they had done, they came rowing to their “ Boat, and made Signs to the rest. Our Men “ made ready for all Effays; the Salvages came “ to them, and they grow familiar one with another, so that ours took one of theirs into their “ Boat, and they took one of ours into theirs; “ then they carried our Men to a Cove where “ their Tents stood, to the Westward of the “ Place, where the Fowl breed; so they carried “ our Man into their Tents, where he remained “ until our Men returned theirs; in our Boat “ went their Man to the Place where the Fowl “ breed; and, we being desirous to know how “ the Salvages killed their Fowl, he shewed

<sup>a</sup> *Pricket's* Account of *Hudson's* Voyage, North-West, Fox, p. 110.

“ them

“ them the Manner how, which was thus: They <sup>August.</sup>  
“ take a long Pole with a Snare at the End,  
“ which they put about the Fowl’s Neck, and  
“ so pluck them down ; when our Men knew  
“ that we had a better Way, and so shewed the  
“ the Salvages the Use of our Pieces, which at  
“ one Shoot would kill seven or eight. To be  
“ short, they returned to the Cove to receive  
“ our Man, and to deliver theirs. When they  
“ came, they made great Joy with Dancing,  
“ Leaping, and Striking their Breasts ; they  
“ offered divers Things to our Men, but they  
“ only took some *Moors* Teeth, which they  
“ gave them for a Knife and two Glafs Buttons ;  
“ so receiving our Man, they came Aboard,  
“ rejoicing at this Chance, as if they had met  
“ with the most simple People of the World.”

*Henry Greene*, more than the rest (who was  
the Principal in the exposing. *Mr. Hudson*  
“ was so confident that we should by no Means  
“ take Care to stand upon our Guard (God  
“ blinded him so) that, where he thought to re-  
“ ceive great Matters from this People, he re-  
“ ceived more than he looked for ; and that  
“ suddenly, by being made an Example for all  
“ Men that make no Conscience of doing Evil ;  
“ and that we take Heed how we trust the Sal-  
“ vage People, how simple soever they seem  
“ to be.

“ They made Haste to be on Shore, and, be-  
“ cause the Ship rode far off, they weighed,

August. “ and stood as near to the Place where the Fowl  
 “ breed as they could : and, because he (this  
 “ Writer) was lame he was to go into the Boat  
 “ to carry such Things as he had in the Cabbin,  
 “ of every Thing somewhat ; and so, with more  
 “ haste than good speed, away he went ; as did  
 “ *Henry Greene, William Wilson, John Thomas,*  
 “ *Michael Pierce, and Andrew Motter,* when they  
 “ came near the Shore, the People were on the  
 “ Hills dancing and leaping ; to the Cove we  
 “ came, where they had drawn up their Boats.  
 “ We brought our Boat to the East Side of the  
 “ Cove close to the Rocks ; on Land they go,  
 “ and make fast the Boat to a great Stone on the  
 “ Shore ; the People came, and every one had  
 “ something in his Hand to barter ; but *Henry*  
 “ *Greene* swore that they should have nothing  
 “ until he had Venison, for that they had so  
 “ promised him by Signs the last Day.

“ Now, when we came, they made Signs to  
 “ their Dogs, whereof there were many like  
 “ Mongrels, as big as Hounds, and pointed to  
 “ the Mountains, and to the Sun, clapping their  
 “ their Hands. Then *Henry Greene, John Tho-*  
 “ *mas,* and *William Wilson* (which two we  
 “ may consider next after *Greene* in the Affair of  
 “ *Mr. Hudson*) stood hard by the Boat’s Head ;  
 “ *Michael Pierce* and *Andrew Motter* (who were  
 “ also in the Conspiracy, but under the Direction  
 “ of the others) were got upon the Rocks ga-  
 “ thering of Sorrel ; not one of them had any  
 “ Weapon

“ Weapon about him, not so much as a Stick, August.  
“ save *Henry Greene* only, who had a Piece of a  
“ Pike in his Hand, nor saw he any Thing  
“ they had to shoot him with. *Henry Greene*  
“ and *Wilson* had Looking-Glasses, Jew-  
“ Trumps, and Bells, which they were shew-  
“ ing; the Salvages standing round about them,  
“ one of them came into the Boat’s Head to shew  
“ *Pricket* a Bottle; this Writer (*Pricket*) made  
“ Signs unto him to get him Ashore, but he  
“ made as though he had not understood him:  
“ Whereupon he stood up, and pointed at him  
“ on Shore. In the mean Time another stole be-  
“ hind to the Stern of the Boat; and, when he  
“ saw him Ashore that was on the Boat’s-Head,  
“ he sat down again, but suddenly he saw the  
“ Legs and Feet of a Man by him, where-  
“ fore he cast up his Head and saw the Salvage,  
“ with his Knife in his Hand, who struck at his  
“ Breast over his Head; he casting up his Arm  
“ to save his Breast, the Salvage wounded his  
“ Arm, and struck him into the Body, under  
“ the right Pap; the Salvage struck a second  
“ Blow, which he met with his left Hand, and  
“ then struck him into the Thigh, and had like  
“ to have cut off the little Finger of his left  
“ Hand. Now this Writer had got hold of the  
“ String of the Knife, and had wound it about  
“ his left Hand, he striving with both his Hands  
“ to make an End of that he had begun, found  
“ the Salvage but weak in the Gripe, and (God  
“ enabling him) getting hold of the Sleeve of his  
“ left

August. “ left Arm, he saw his left Side lay open to him ;  
 “ which when he saw, he put the Sleeve of his  
 “ left Arm into his left Hand, holding the String  
 “ of the Knife fast in the same Hand, and, ha-  
 “ ving got his right Hand at Liberty, he fought  
 “ for somewhat, wherewith to strike him, not re-  
 “ membering his Dagger at his Side ; but, look-  
 “ ing down he saw it, and therewith struck the  
 “ Salvage into the Body and Throat.

“ Whilst he was thus assaulted in the Boat,  
 “ their Men were set upon on the Shore ; *John*  
 “ *Thomas* and *William Wilson* had their Bowels  
 “ cut, and *Michael Pierce* and *Henry Greene*,  
 “ being mortally wounded, came tumbling into  
 “ the Boat together ; when *Andrew Motter* saw  
 “ this Medley, he came running down the  
 “ Rock, and leaped into the Sea, and so swam  
 “ to the Boat, and hung at her Stern, until  
 “ *Michael Pierce* took him in, who manfully  
 “ made good the Boat’s-Head, against the Salva-  
 “ ges that pressed fore upon them. Now *Michael*  
 “ *Pierce* had got a Hatchet, with which he  
 “ struck one so that he lay sprawling in the Sea ;  
 “ *Henry Greene* cried *Couragio*, and laid about  
 “ him with a Truncheon. This Writer crieth to  
 “ clear the Boat’s-Head, and *Andrew Motter*  
 “ crieth to be taken in ; the Salvages betake  
 “ them to their Bows and Arrows, which they  
 “ sent so amongst them, that *Henry Greene* was  
 “ slain outright, and *Michael Pierce* received  
 “ many Wounds, and so did the rest. *Michael*  
*Pierce*

“ *Pierce* cleareth the Boat, and putteth it from *August*.  
“ Shore, and helpeth *Andrew Motter* in ; but, in  
“ the Clearing the Boat, *Pricket* received a  
“ cruel Wound in the Back with an Arrow.  
“ *Michael Pierce* and *Motter* rowed away the  
“ Boat; which when the Salvages saw, they  
“ came to their Boats, which they feared they  
“ would have launched to have followed them,  
“ but they did not ; their Ship was in the middle  
“ of the Channel, and yet could not see them all  
“ this Time.

“ Now when they had rowed a good Way from  
“ the Shore, *Pierce* fainted and could row no  
“ more. Then was *Motter* driven to stand in  
“ the Boat’s-Head, and wave to the Ship, which  
“ at first saw them not ; and, when they did,  
“ they could not tell what to make of them, but  
“ in they stood for them, and so they took them  
“ up. *Greene* was thus thrown into the Sea,  
“ the rest were taken into the Ship, the Salvage  
“ being yet alive, but without Sense. That Day  
“ dyed *Wilson*, cursing and swearing in a most  
“ fearful Manner ; *Michael Pierce* lived two  
“ Days and then died. Thus you have had the  
“ tragical End of *Greene*, and his three Mates ;  
“ the just Judgments of God, on the Principals  
“ in the exposing of their Commander Mr. *Hud-*  
“ *son*, with his Son, and seven more of his  
“ People, who were never more heard of.”

Sir.

## A VOYAGE for the

Sir Thomas Button, who was the next in this Voyage, setting out in the Year 1612, saw the *Eskemaux*, first upon this Island; they having also a Fray with his People: " Here, " says Captain *Fox*, the Salvages did offer to " assault his Men (found going to kill Willocks, of " which there is such Store, that in a short Time " he could have laded his Boat) with two Canoes, " and, to the number of seventy or eighty Men, " came upon them, until with one Musket-Shot " he slew one of their Men, and hurt more, who, " much amazed with the Report and Execu- " tion of a Musket, retired; yet, at his Coming " from thence, he sending his Pinnace-Boat on " Land to take in fresh Water, the Salvages were " laid in Ambush amongst the Rocks, and slew " him five Men; one escaped by Swimming. " It is much to be doubted but that the Salva- " ges did slay those Men, in Revenge for four of " their great Canoes he took off the Land " from this People, whereof he restored but " two back again. "

Mr. *Pricket's* Account of the Discovery of this Island is, that, when Mr. *Hudson* " had left " *Nottingham*, to the North-East, they fell into " a Rippling or Overfall of a Current, which, " at the first, says Mr. *Pricket*, we took to be a " Shoal, but, the Lead being cast, we had no " Ground; on we passed still in Sight of the " South Shore, until we raised Land lying from

<sup>a</sup> North-West, *Fox*. P. 119.

" the  
" tool  
" Lar  
" stre  
" Sou  
" the  
" Dig  
" now  
" Cap  
" Wol  
called  
Fathor

b Si  
son na  
Fox to  
cipal A  
supply  
came f  
this A  
never I

The  
" this  
" we  
" from  
" the  
" plai  
" four  
" Her  
" Mu

<sup>a</sup> *Purcha*

“ the Main, some two Leagues; <sup>a</sup> our Master August.  
“ took this to be part of the Main of the North  
“ Land, but it was an Island, the North-Side  
“ stretching out to the West, more than the  
“ South. This Island hath a very fair Head to  
“ the East, and which our Master named  
“ *Diggs's Cape*, the Land on the South Side,  
“ now falling away to the South, makes another  
“ Cape or Head-land, which our Master named  
“ *Wolfstenholme Cape*.” And in this Streight (now  
called *Bond's Inlet*) at the Mouth with a 100  
Fathom of Line out, *Hudson* found no Ground.

<sup>b</sup> Sir *John Wolfstenholme*, after whom Mr. *Hudson* named the Cape, is mentioned by Captain *Fox* to have been for eight Voyages, the principal Adventurer in the Stock (and Treasurer) supplying the Stock Adventure, when the Stock came slowly in; and, if he had been wanting in this Assistance, most of those Discoveries would never have been attempted.

The Boat went Ashore, says Mr. *Pricket*, “ to  
“ this Island Cape, or *Diggs's Island*; but to it  
“ we came on the North Side, and up we got  
“ from one Rock to another, until we came unto  
“ the highest of that Part, here we found some  
“ plain Ground and saw some Deer; at first  
“ four or five, and after a dozen or sixteen in a  
“ Herd, but could not come nigh them within  
“ Musket-Shot.

<sup>a</sup> *Purchase's Pil.* Lib. iii. Chap. 17. P. 600. <sup>b</sup> North-West  
*Fox.* P. 226.

August.

“ Thus going from one Place to another,  
 “ we saw to the West of us a high Hill above  
 “ all the rest, it being nigh us, but it proved  
 “ further off than we made Account; for when  
 “ we came to it, the Land was so steep on the  
 “ East and North-East Parts that we could not  
 “ get unto it. To the South-West we saw that  
 “ we might, and towards that Part we went  
 “ along by the Side of a great Pond of Water  
 “ which lieth under the East Side of this Hill,  
 “ and there runneth out of it a Stream of Water,  
 “ as much as would drive an overshot Mill,  
 “ which falleth down from a high Cliff into the  
 “ Sea on the South Side. In this Place great  
 “ Store of Fowl breed, and there is the best  
 “ Grass I had seen since we came from *England*,<sup>b</sup>  
 “ Here we found Sorrel, and that which we call  
 “ Scurvy-Grass, in great Abundance. Passing  
 “ along we saw some round Hills of Stone like  
 “ Grass-Cocks, which at the first I took to be  
 “ the Work of some Christian; we passed by  
 “ them until we came to the South Side of the  
 “ Hill, then went unto them, and there found  
 “ more; and, being nigh them, I turned off  
 “ the uppermost Stone, and found it hollow

<sup>a</sup> *Purchas's Pil. Lib. iii. P. 160.*

<sup>b</sup> Preferable to what they had seen at the *Orkneys, Fair-Island, or Iceland*, all which Places they touched at, and landed no where in the Streights but upon one of the Isles of *God's Mercy*, which *Mr. Hudson* so named. That is described as barren Land, having nothing thereon but Water-Plashes, and torn Rocks, as though it had been subject to Earthquakes.

“ within

“ with  
 “ Ne  
 “ in b  
 “ Pie  
 “ we  
 “ seen  
 “ in t  
 “ mig  
 “ he f

Fro  
 a Cap  
 Parcel  
 ward a  
 longs t  
 called  
 prehen  
 which,  
 passing  
 titude

The  
 tities, a  
 ficult t  
 and Sh  
 Weath  
 feldom  
 shoot o  
 sensible  
 happen  
 to repe

“ within, and full of Fowl hanged by their <sup>August.</sup>  
“ Necks. Our Master (in the mean time) came  
“ in between the two Lands, and shot off some  
“ Pieces to call us Aboard, for it was a Fog;  
“ we came Aboard and told him what we had  
“ seen, and persuaded him to stay a Day or two  
“ in the Place; telling him what Refreshing  
“ might there be had; but by no Means would  
“ he stay, who was not pleased with the Motion.”

From the Name of *Diggs* given by *Hudson* to a Cape, *Diggs* is now become the Name of a Parcel of Islands which lie near both to Westward and Southward of such Island to which belongs the Cape, and which Islands were formerly called *Hackluyt's* Islands, but they are all comprehended under the Name of *Diggs's* Islands, which, as well as the Cape, Mr. *Hudson* in passing Southward left West of him. The Latitude of the Cape is 62. 42. Longitude 71. 45.

The Willocks which are here in great Quantities, and seen continually up the Straights, are difficult to kill with small Shot except on the Head; and Shooting them is a constant Diversion in fine Weather, but for Diversion only, for they are seldom or ever eat even by the Seamen; if you shoot one of these the others will swim by it, insensible of their own Danger, and of what hath happened to the other, giving you Opportunity to repeat your Fire.

August. *Diggs's Isles* are the Termination of *Hudson's Streights* to the South-Westward, and, as *Hudson's Streights* is a Part of great Account in the Voyage, it may not be improper to attempt to give the Reader a further Idea of these Streights than can be collected from what hath been already said. It is a Channel of unequal Breadths, both whose Shores are bounded by high, ragged, mountainous Rocks, having Snow almost at all Times lying on them, and no Wood, Grass, or Earth to be seen on the Parts next the Water. In some Hollows or Vallies within Land, there is a shallow Soil, producing Scurvy-Grass, Sorrel and other small Herbs with Grass, and Moss, but no Wood, Underwood, or any kind of Shrub; and in such Valleys or Hollows, there are generally Ponds which are formed from the Waters of the melted Snow. <sup>a</sup> Captain *Fox* calls both Shores the Irremarkable Land: " I was " (says he) in Latitude 61<sup>o</sup>. 57". and stood in " close to this Irremarkable Shore, and so all the " Land within the Streight may be called, for " it is all shoaring or descending from the highest " Mountains to the Sea."

At both Ends of these Streights are Islands, as those of *Resolution* and *Button's* to the Eastward. To the Westward *Salisbury* and *Nottingham*, and more Westerly than those is *Diggs's Isle*. There are many Islands along both Shores, from one

<sup>a</sup> North-West, *Fox* P. 189.

udson's  
s Hud-  
in the  
mpt to  
reights  
already  
, both  
agged,  
at all  
rags, or  
Water.  
, there  
, Sor-  
Moss,  
ind of  
, there  
om the  
ox calls  
I was  
ood in  
all the  
ed, for  
highest

nds, as  
ftward.  
m, and  
There  
om one

End







Am

Faint, illegible text at the top of the page, possibly a header or title.

Large block of faint, illegible text in the middle of the page.

Another large block of faint, illegible text in the lower middle of the page.

Faint, illegible text at the bottom of the page.

En  
ma  
fent  
Pri  
Sak  
app  
it)

A  
affo  
ing  
tinu  
by th  
Shor  
any  
no S  
Acco  
Shor  
Inlan  
a Pa

T  
roun  
Streig  
ward  
it hat  
Davi  
son's  
Inlan  
pose t  
West  
which

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

69

End of the Streights to the other, the most remarkable of which upon the South Shore at present known are *Grass-Island*, and the Island of *Prince Charles*. On the North Side, the upper *Salvage Isles*, the Island of *Terra Nivea* (which appears itself like a Main, having Islands before it) and the lower *Salvage Isles*.

As the Shores of the Streights are barren and affording no Trade for want of Inhabitants, (it being impossible for them to subsist there for a Continuance, and are only frequented in the Summer by the *Eskimaux* who come to hunt and Fish) these Shores have therefore been seldom touched at by any Ships in their Passage up the Streights, and no Searches made Inland so as to attain a certain Account as to either of them. As to the North Shore, whether it is composed of one or more Islands; as to the South Shore, whether it is a Part of the main Land of *America* or an Island.

The North Shore of *Hudson's Streights* is surrounded by Sea, a *Nameless Streight* (which Streight joins with *Baffyne's Bay*) is to the Westward. *Baffyne's Bay* with a Communication which it hath with Streights *Davis* is to the Northward, *Davis's Streights* is to the Eastward, and *Hudson's Streights* to the Southward, so making an Island which is called *James's Isle*: Others suppose there are three Islands; that on the North-West being cut through by *Cumberland Bay*, which is thought to communicate with *Baffyne's*  
Bay

August.

Bay to the North. The Isle on the South-East is said to be separated from that on the South-West by *White Bear Bay*, which is thought to run into *Cumberland Bay*. The Isle on the North-West is then named *Cumberland Island*; that on the South-East the Island of *Good Fortune*; that on the South-West, *James's Island*.

The South Shore which was named *New-Britain* by Mr. *Hudson*, but is now mostly known by the Name of the *Labrador Shore*, and *Terra Corterealis*, hath several Inlets along the Coast, the principal of which are described to be in a deep Bay, which is on the South Shore immediately after entering the Streights; by which Inlets, it hath always been imagined, there is a nearer Communication with *Hudson's Bay* than by *Hudson's Streights*; and what adds more Probability than there formerly was to this, is a new discovered Sea on the Western Side of this *Labrador Shore*, which is open to *Hudson's Bay*. But suppose there was a Communication found between this Bay, which is to the Southward, immediately after entering *Hudson's Streights*, and *Hudson's Bay*; and so a much nearer Cut than by *Hudson's Streights*; yet it is probable from the great Quantity of Ice which settles down in this Bay to the Southward, that a Passage that Way would be both more hazardous, and dilatory, than by the Way of *Hudson's Streights*. From their Situation it is also supposed, that there may be a Communication between that Inlet in Lat. 56. which

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

71

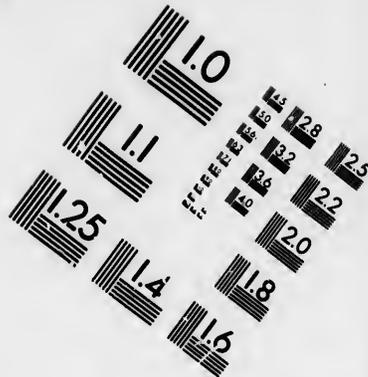
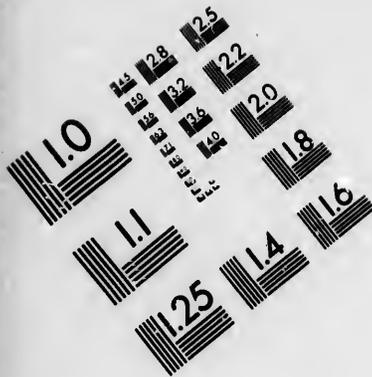
August.

which is to the Eastward of this Shore from the *Atlantick* Ocean, and was discovered by Captain *Davis* in the Year 1586 (which he sailed ten Leagues up two Leagues broad, very fair Woods on both Sides) and this new discovered Sea to the Westward of this Shore opening to *Hudson's* Bay, which would make another Passage into it.

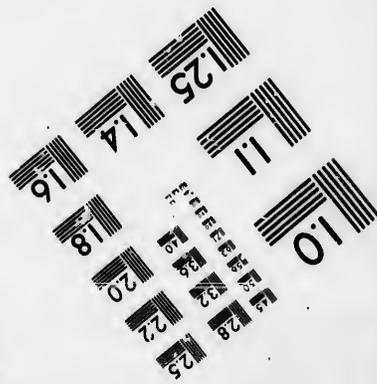
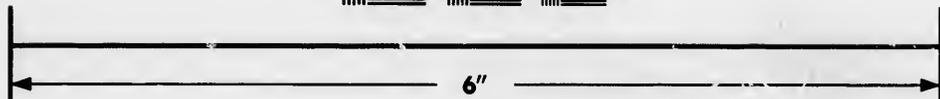
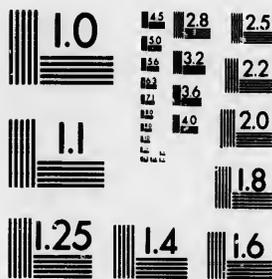
On both Shores there are a Number of Capes, which it is equally as difficult to affix the Names to, as to many of the Islands; and, if done, would be of little Use to the Navigator, nor be such a Satisfaction as the Curious seek after.

The Entrance into *Hudson's* Streights is to the Southward of the Isles of *Resolution* in Latitude  $61^{\circ} 25'$ . Longitude  $64^{\circ}$ . W. between that and Cape *Chidley*, which Cape is a Point of the South Main, within a Parcel of Islands called *Button's* Isles, and formerly *Chidley* Isles; *Button's* Isles nominated from Sir *Thomas Button*, he having passed between them and the Main in his Passage Home. The Entrance is generally computed at about thirteen Leagues; *Resolution* which lies N. by E. is about six Leagues, and between *Resolution* and the Land to the Northward in the narrowest Part is about eight Miles, which is called *Lumley's* Inlet, after Lord *Lumley*, a Promoter of these Expeditions, and of whom Captain *Fox* says, that, he inquiring at *Hartlepool* in the Bishoprick of *Durham*, at whose Charge their





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

20 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14560  
(716) 872-4503

1.5 1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5  
2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0

10  
5  
10

August.

their Pier was built, an old Man answered, *Marrye at my good Lord LUMLEY's, whose Soul was in Heaven, before his Bones were cold.* This Inlet communicating with the Sea on the Western Part of *Resolution*, which is now called *Mistake Bay*, is supposed to have a Branch of it which runs at the Back of the *Terra Nivea*, and comes into the Streights by the North Bay.

From *Resolution* to *Diggs's* Isle, the computed Distance is one hundred and forty Leagues; from *Resolution* to the upper *Salvage* Isles sixty Leagues, from the upper *Salvages* to *Cape Charles* sixty more, and from *Cape Charles* to *Diggs's* Isles 20 Leagues; the Streight lies W. N. W. and E. S. E. at its first Entrance is the greatest Breadth, by Reason of a great Bay to the Southward; then it narrows from the upper *Salvages* to *Cape Charles*, the Width between the two Shores not exceeding fifteen Leagues. At *Cape Charles* the Streight widens, and between *Cape Diggs* and the North Main it is twenty Leagues. The Soundings at the Entrance are two hundred Fathom, and the ordinary Depths in the Middle of the Streights are one hundred and twenty Fathom, but the Soundings decrease towards the Shores and Islands, at very various Depths.

*Hudson's* Streights, and *Davis's* Streights, are Drains by which the Land Waters (the Produce of the melting Snow) empty themselves into the Ocean, at such Times occasioning extraordinary Currents, into which the Ice sets, after

after  
on t  
Num  
Parts  
off f  
for th  
strucl  
Sum  
Streig  
sidere  
happ  
passin  
Ice of  
the O  
the n  
some,  
Streig  
*May*,  
the S  
North  
afloat,  
up the  
*son* Ba  
going  
respec  
latter  
until  
Mr. B  
Mr. B  
which

after being loosened by the Thaw in the Rivers, August. on the Shoal Shores, and out of the infinite Number of small Bays, which are in all those Parts, and floated out of such Rivers, Bays, and off such Shores; and this Ice, so setting forward for the Ocean with these Currents, is what obstructs the Passage up the Streights for the first Summer Months; not Ice generated in the Streights themselves, which, only the Tide considered, would be impossible. So it commonly happens that in the Month of *September*, in passing the Streights you see little or no Ice, the Ice of that Year being either melted or gone into the Ocean; and there being no Ice to come until the next Spring: Therefore it is questioned by some, whether it would not be better to pass the Streights the latter End of *April*, or early in *May*, as the Spring would be then just begun to the Southward, and consequently not to the Northward, for which Reason less Ice would be afloat, and therefore less to hinder the Passage up the Streights. What is practised by the *Hudson Bay* Ships is no Precedent in the Case; they going at a Time when it is most suitable with respect to their Trade, which is not in before the latter End of *June*, and their Cargoes not ready until *July*; none of the Discoverers (excepting Mr. *Bylot*) ever entered the Streights until *June*. Mr. *Bylot* entered them the 17th of *May*, at which Time he was forced to return on account

August.

of the Ice; not entering the Streights again until the twenty-ninth of the same Month.

Upon the Land are Land Animals, as Bears, Foxes, Deer, Wolves; also Fowl, as Partridge. No Fish have been ever caught in the Water of the Streights, but it is frequented by white Bears, and a great Number of Seals, which are sometimes in the Water, at other times upon the Shore or upon Pieces of the Ice. There are also Sea Unicorns, some of them were seen by Captain Fox, and their Horns are to be bought sometimes of the *Eskemaux*. A Whale before this Voyage, hath never been seen twenty Leagues up the Streights. There is plenty of Water Fowl, such as Willocks, Sea Pigeons, and Gulls.

In the passing this Streight the North Shore is kept to by all Ships, as being clearest of Ice, the Currents shooting over to the South and Eastward, attracted by a Bay at the Back of Cape *Charles*, and of a much larger Bay mentioned to the Westward and Southward of the Entrance of this Streight. When they arrive at the Length of Cape *Charles*, they usually stand over to the Southward, as being the nearest Course to go into *Hudson's* Streights; not that the Streight is not equally Navigable between *Salisbury* and *Nottingham*, and the North Main, as it is to the Southward. There may be also another Reason, besides the Nearness, for the going to the Southward of these Islands, though that is Reason sufficient, which

which is that the Channel to the Northward of *Nottingham* lies fairer to receive the Ice that shall come down the *Nameless* Streight and from *Baffyn's* Bay, than the Channel to the Southward does. The Ships bound for the Bay may also go to the Southward of these Islands as they are more in the Tide's Way which goes into *Hudson's* Bay than they would be in going to the Northward of such Islands.

The Tides in these Streights flow Eastward and ebb Westward, and the Flood is regular in its Progress up them, or in these Streights the Tide flows sooner or later at the several Places as they respectively lie to the Eastward, or Westward the one of the other, at those to the Eastward as being nearer the Entrance sooner, at those to the Westward proportionably later. Mr. *Baffyn* in his Account observes, that <sup>a</sup> an E. S. E. Moon makes a full Sea at *Resolution* at half an Hour past seven on the Change Day. That the Water rises and falls near four Fathoms. <sup>b</sup> He tells us also that, at the *Salvage* Isles, a South-East Moon four Degrees East makes a full Sea, flowing almost as much Water, as at *Resolution*, and the Tide comes from the Eastward. <sup>c</sup> Captain *Hawbridge* gives an Account, that at a little Island near Cape *Charles*, in a Bay of such Island, he found it flowed twenty-one Feet, a S. E. Moon making a full Sea. Sending some Men in a Boat to row

<sup>a</sup> North-West, *Fox*, P. 198. <sup>b</sup> 140. <sup>c</sup> P. 167.

August.

about the Island, when it bore S. E. of them, it had a strong set Tide from E. <sup>d</sup> At *Nottingham* Mr. *Baffyne* says, upon the Change Day it flows ten and a half, but no Height of the Tide is mentioned. <sup>e</sup> At *Cape Diggs*, where Mr. *Hudson* sent his Men Ashore, by his own Memorandum the Tide of Flood came from the North, flowing by the Shore five Fathoms. Should that Supposition be true, that the North Shore of the Streights is divided into three Islands, then it is to be supposed that the Streights between such Islands have also their Tides as well as *Hudson's* Streights, and that they vent such Tides, Part into *Hudson's* Streights, and other Parts into the *Nameless* Streight and *Baffyne's* Bay, and receive the Tides again from thence upon their Return. The Tide also comes into *Hudson's* Streights by *Mistake* Bay; and by the *North* Bay (if *Terra Nivea* is an Island) as well as it does by *Resolution*.

After passing the Streights to the Westward, one Shore of the Streights trends away North, and is the Eastern Shore of a *Nameless* Streight; the other Shore trends away Southward, and is the Eastern Shore of *Hudson's* Bay. Whither we are now pursuing our Voyage with squally Weather at N. E. with some Rain; at eleven at Night of *August* the first, and afterwards calm Weather; the calm Weather continued until near four in

North-West, *Fox*. <sup>d</sup> P. 145. <sup>e</sup> P. 75.

the

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

77

the Morning of *August* the second, and hazy; then August...  
ad. a gentle Wind at W. but at half an Hour after five a sudden Squall of Wind at the same Point; afterwards blowing fresh with Sleet and Rain until ten, during which Time it was very cold; after ten dry Weather till near twelve, then the Wind suddenly changed to N. E. and fell calm from blowing fresh before. We had a large Swell from the Westward all the Afternoon, which was cloudy until five and cold; the Wind having changed at two to the N. moderate at five in the Evening until near eight, then squally, cloudy until twelve, then hazy with Squalls of Wind, and, at two the Morning of *August* the third, the Wind N. N. W. with Rain; 3d. at half an Hour after two Snow, very cold, Squalls less and the Snow ceased towards four, cloudy and fresh Gales to ten, then Snow; towards eleven fair, Wind less, and at N. since six, the Weather also much warmer, the Sun breaking out at Times. Soon after saw *Mansel's* Isle from the Deck, bearing S. distant about seven Leagues, which Island was so named by Sir *Thomas Button* after Sir *Robert Mansel*, Mr. *Hudson* never seeing it. According to Captain *James*, whose People were Ashore there, it is a low Island, little higher than a dry Sand-bank, hath Ponds upon it of fresh Water, but no Grass; and is entirely barren. This Part of the Island which we saw at four, and also at six, appeared to us as a white sandy Beach, with a low flat Shore within it, and this Island at six bore off us from the S. S. W.

to

August.

to the S. S. E. distant about ten Miles, and lies in the direct Way, dividing the Entrance into the Bay into two Channels, both which are navigable. The Island is about twenty Leagues long and three broad, the North End of it is thirteen Leagues W. by S. by true Compass from Cape Digge, the North End lies in Lat. 62. 40. and Longitude 79°. 5 W. The Afternoon was cloudy with Sun-shine, the Evening pleasant but cold, and the fresh Gale continuing at W. N. W. at ten cloudy with some Rain, afterwards clear, then cloudy and close Weather until eight in the Morning of *August* the fourth, then Sun-shine with a moderate Gale, cloudy again towards Noon, but in the Afternoon a clear Sky and also in the Evening.

4th.

It was observable that the Sea had been To-day, and Yesterday, of a clearer and brighter Colour, than it had been for some Time before; at ten there was a strong fetid Smell from the Windward, and, at half an Hour after five, Captain *Moor* then ahead wore Ship, soon afterwards we perceived a dead Whale floating Belly upwards, the Skin very much tore by the Birds, and a Willock then on him which kept there until shot. It being moderate Weather, the small Boat was immediately lowered, Captain *Moor* also sent his, and afterwards with the Assistance of Captain *Moor's* Pinnace (all the Boats being made fast to the Whale) they towed it alongside the *Dobbs*: The Whale was about five and forty Feet in Length,

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

79

Length, his Jaw-Bone eight Feet. Great Part August.  
of the Fins were dropped off, the Whale being  
much putrefied; but the remaining Fin was got  
and almost two Casks of Blubber. From the  
Harpoon which was in the Whale, it may be  
supposed to have been killed by the *Eskimaux*,  
whose Harpoons are of Bone, about three Inches  
long, double-forked at one End as a Snakes  
Tongue, and a single Fork on one Side above  
the double Fork; there is a Hole at the other End  
of the Bone, in which they put a Staff to strike  
with; the Staff being loose, parts from the Har-  
poon as soon as it is entered; to the Harpoon they  
fasten a Thong of Sea-Horse-Hide of a Finger's  
Breadth, and about forty Yards in Length or  
more, to which thong they tie a Seal Skin  
blowed up like a Bladder, which not only shews  
where the Fish is, but also greatly fatigues it.  
The Thong here was cut off from the Harpoon  
excepting a small Piece, and the Harpoon was  
got out with some Difficulty, being quite within  
the Fat and entering the Flesh. It fell calm  
soon after that the Whale was alongside, they  
continued to work on it till about nine, and at  
ten o'Clock there was a Breeze of Wind but  
contrary, as it had been some Days before; the  
Wind was now N. W. by W. and these De-  
lays from the Wind, after having been so long  
detained in the Ice, were a great Check to the  
Hopes we had entertained with respect to what  
we should do that Season.

Such

August. Such Weather, as was on *August* the fourth, continued the Morning, Afternoon, and to Mid-  
 5th. night of *August* the fifth, the Wind at four in Morning N. at Noon N. W. and in the Evening W. the Weather also quite warm. At eight in the Morning the Sea appeared of a lightish and Green Colour, but looked at nine, as if a whitish Mud was mixed with it, and at ten quite changed to a dirty white Colour with many Weeds swimming in it;

6th. The Morning of the of Sixth *August* was foggy and hazy until three, then cloudy with Fog Banks in the Horizon, warm and a little Wind at S. W. at five: At half an Hour after five a Breeze of Wind, at S. W. the same Weather until six, excepting a sensible Alteration, as to its becoming colder, then clear; cloudy from eight to ten, also hazy with Wind S. At half an Hour after ten S. S. E. with Rain, which lasted until two in the Afternoon, when we imagined we saw Land, but, having a thick Horizon, could not be certain; cloudy until four, but dry Weather. cold and raw, hazy until six, then Sun-shine; we altered our Course from N. N. W. to N. by W. cloudy at Ten with a fresh Gale and fair, missing a Sight of *Cary's Swans Nest*, and the Capes to Eastward, and Westward, as Cape *Pembroke* and Cape *Southampton*, which the *Hudson's Bay Ships*, it being out of their Course, seldom fall in with, and therefore are little known.

The

cloud  
 a pie  
 at te  
 at N  
 ing f  
 in th  
 ouzy  
 most  
 Star-

Th  
 small  
 Noon  
 88. 3  
 Side o

a As  
 hampton  
 other to  
 Fox, in  
 passed f  
 North  
 Cary's-  
 is propo  
 more N  
 Captain  
 Mansel  
 broke, S  
 eminent  
 the Ice,  
 it seeme  
 The La  
 it was an  
 it, like  
 Seine in

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

81

\* The Morning of *August* the seventh was <sup>August.</sup> cloudy until nine, then Sunshine, and afterwards <sup>7th.</sup> a pleasant Day, and the Weather warm, having at ten altered our Course to N. W. less Wind at Noon, and in the Afternoon, but changing from N. E. to W. S. W. Sounding at six in the Evening there were 113 Fathoms, light ouzy Mud; the same kind of Ground as is almost all over the Bay. The Night clear and Star-Light.

The Morning of the eighth cloudy, with <sup>8th.</sup> small Wind at W. by S. and warm, towards Noon Sun-shine Latitude 61. 58. Longitude 88. 37. W. so we were well over to the Western Side of the Bay; and found a very sensible Difference

As to *Cary's-Swans Nest*, with *Pembroke*, and *Southampton*, the two Capes, one to the Eastward, and the other to the Westward of *Cary's-Swans Nest*, Captain *Fox*, in his Account, P. 119, says Sir *Thomas Button* passed from Sir *Dudley Diggs's Isle*, to a Cape on the North Side of his Bay's Entrance, which he named *Cary's-Swans Nest*, (and his Bay, or *Button's Bay* is properly all that Part of *Hudson's Bay*, which is more Northward than *Diggs's Islands*.) — Again Captain *Fox*, P. 198, I think so named (speaking of *Mansel's Isle*) by Sir *Thomas Button*, as also Cape *Pembroke*, *Southampton*, and *Cary's-Swans Nest*, the last most eminent of the three. Again P. 200, made fast to the Ice, a reasonable Distance from the low Island, as it seemed, for he thought he could see both Ends. — The Land lay East and West, but he could not fully say it was an Island, for it lay like a Ridge, or, to simile it, like to the *Retyres*, in the Mouth of the River of *Saine* in *Normandy*. Upon the 21st of *July*, he made  
M from

The

August, ference, as to Cold, with respect to what we had felt in the Streights, or before entering of them; the Afternoon was cloudy, and Wind to E. N. E. though but small, at ten to N. N. W. still cloudy. The Soundings at Noon were 90 Fathoms soft oozy Ground. Saw a Plover To-day which was the first we had seen.

At

from the Ice; to stand to the Land; sent his Boat Ashore to try the Tide, and concludes, "Assuredly this was *Cary's-Swans Nest*, for, both from East to West Ends, it stretcheth to the North; our Men chas'd Swans on Shore, but got none; they say there is Earth, strange Moss, Quagmires and Water-plashes. At 4 o'Clock I took Leave, and stood from 6 Fathoms into 30, losing Sight thereof; and from thence I stood to the Westward, with a North-West Wind, close halled; leaving both the Cape and Ice behind me". — P. 228. 229, — upon his Return Captain Fox says, "Being at Noon (*September 7th*) in Lat. 61. 15. the depth 90 Fathoms; all this Day with an E. S. E. Wind, I stood N. E. by N. close halled, 13 Leagues; this Night, I saw the Land by my Account about *Cary's-Swans Nest*, from whence I departed the 21st of *July*. — I think, if I had not come forth upon the Deck, as I did, we had run Ashore upon this low Land; I caused presently to tack about, and we stood off again into 70 Fathoms; we had but 14, presently after we had tacked. We were in 62. 21. the Land true North 6 Miles off; I found it to be Cape *Pembroke*, 2 or 3 Leagues distant N. E. from *Cary's-Swans Nest*; with this S. E. Wind, I was fain to ply up for *Sea-Horse Point*. This Land is stony, and a good bold Shore; I stood off into 90, and in again into 13 Fathoms, and sometimes less. By this (that is the 9th) we have plied up another Cape, the Deep of whose Bay, betwixt the same and Cape *Pembroke*, maketh the E. Side thereof lie near S. and by E. I was in 7 Fathoms

in

At two in the Morning of the ninth, the Wind <sup>August.</sup> was round to N. N. E. and fresh, cloudy until <sup>9ch.</sup> ten, then fair and clear; the Wind N. W. by N. Latitude 62. 13. Longitude 89. 56. Soundings at Noon soft Ouzy Ground, 95. Fathom. The Afternoon cloudy until two, then clear with Sun-shine, the Evening pleasant, at Night fine clear

“ in the Bay. — When I doubled this Cape, the Land stretched to the N. In dutiful Remembrance I named it Cape *Linsay*; the Land beyond lay N. E. — Fox in his Account of Sir *Thomas Button's*, Voyage, P. 133. He (Sir *Thomas Button*) came to 43. Fathoms, which Shoaling was upon the North Part of the Island he watered upon (which was *Mansel's* Isle) and this Island, and the said Cape, Cape *Pembroke*, where his Boat was at the 14th Day, lie S. S. E.  $\frac{1}{2}$  Easterly and N. N. W.  $\frac{1}{2}$  Northerly, about ten Leagues between both.

Captain *James's* Voyage for the Discovering a Passage to the South Sea, August the 19th, we continued our Course between the N. N. E. and the N. by E. and by Noon were in Lat. 61. 7. some twelve Leagues off the Shore, I ordered the Master, to shape his Course N. E. to look to that Place betwixt *Cary's Swans Nest* and *Ne ultra*. The 21st, we were in Lat. 61. 45. — the 21st, the Water shoal'd, so that we did make Account, that we approached the Land, but, at Noon, the Wind came up at N. E. directly opposite. We loosed as near in as we could, and as it enlarged we came to stand E. and E. by N. the 22d, we fell with the Land to Westward of *Cary's Swans Nest*, where we had 40 Fathoms, three Leagues off; we stood in within a League of the Shore, into 15 Fathoms, and seeing the Land to the Southward of us, we compassed about it, it being *Cary's Swans Nest*, which is in Lat. 62. all the 23d, we sailed N. E. and for the most Part in Sight of Land.

August.

clear Weather; this Day, and the Day before, a great Quantity of Sea-weed passed us, and the Sea though clear, appearing also of a dark green Colour, and was very Frothy, which was supposed to be an Instance of there being no Ice in those Parts.

10th.

The Morning of the tenth was fine and clear, very pleasant, and produced the most delightful Day we had seen since we left the *Orkneys*, though a fresh Gale at W. N. W. our Latitude 63. 22. Longitude, 91. 18. W. Soundings 70 Fathoms. At three saw the Land N. W. Northerly to the N. E. by E. and at six the Westernmost Point in Sight, W. by N. the Easternmost E. Northerly,

Captain *Fox* in his Account of Sir *Thomas Button's* Expedition P. 128. as to Cape *Southampton*, August 5th, at two in the Morning, he stands two Leagues N. E. and until Noon seven Leagues S. S. W. and past four that Morning he saw Land about two Leagues off, bearing from E. to S. he writeth that the Sight of it grieved him much, so that now he made himself assured of that which he did but doubt before; which was that they join to the Eastern Part of the Bay, from whence he came; but I do otherwise believe.

All the Afternoon, he stood along the Shore, edging into 7 Fathoms, and cross a Race which set N. E. and S. W. and continued about half a Glass; at four o'Clock the N. W. Point of the Land did bear from him N. W. by N. about a Mile off; then steering within less than one Mile of this Cape Land, for so it was, and a fair one of a low one as ever he saw, you shall have 9 to 10 Fathom, and shall open a very safe Bay. The Eastern Land thereof will bear from you E. by N. 4 Leagues off.

seeming

seem  
and I  
ment  
and w  
*Hope's*  
but 3  
though  
and re  
clear,  
when t  
it was  
tinued  
Latitud  
at two  
deratin  
Mornin  
to N. b  
warm, t  
W. La  
Soundin  
small Sa  
moderat  
saw the  
off, the  
near this  
  
On t  
Weather  
became  
*Moor* ma  
fending  
Captain

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

85

seeming to be a Bay with Islands at the Bottom, August. and Inlets, a plain level Shore (but no Judgment could be formed, the Haze being over it) and was what Sir *Thomas Button* had named *Hope's Advance*. Upon Sounding, there was but 35 Fathom and Rocky Ground. It was thought best to stand out all Night with the Ships, and return in the Morning. The Night was clear, so to two in the Morning of the eleventh, 11th. when the Wind was W. S. W. at seven o'Clock it was hazy, and at eight a thick Fog which continued until Noon, then a strong Wind at S. W. Latitude 63. 22. Longitude 92. 18. W. Wind at two W. N. W. causing it to be cold moderating sometimes, and then freshening. The Morning of the twelfth, at four the Wind came 12th. to N. by E. altering the Weather from cold to warm, the Wind not abated until ten, then N. by W. Latitude 62. 43. Longitude 92. 39. W. Soundings at Noon 75 Fathoms, Ouze with some small Sand. The Afternoon clear Weather and moderate; in the Evening being also clear, we saw the Land of *Marble Island* about five Leagues off, the Soundings were 70 Fathoms though so near this Island.

On the thirteenth in the Morning, pleasant 13th. Weather, stood in for the Island, but the Wind became small, and it was almost calm; Captain *Moor* made a Signal to speak with Captain *Smith*, sending his Boat Aboard the *California*, in which Captain *Smith* went, some little Time after the Boat

August.

Boat was sent for the Officers, and Surgeon, who were Members of the Council, to hold a Council on Board the *Dobbs*.

The Holding these Councils was instituted by the Instructions which the Captains had delivered to them in Writing, before their setting out, and signed by the North-West Committee, which consisted of nine of the Subscribers to this Undertaking, deputed by the rest for the Management of it. These Councils by such Instructions were to be composed of the Captains of the two Ships, the Lieutenants, the Mates, the Surgeons, the Mineralist or Draughts-man. If the Ships were separated, then the Captain, Lieutenant, Mate, and Surgeon of each Ship respectively were to compose a Council on Board such Ship. These Councils were intended to be held in all difficult Cases, or where Doubts might arise to consider on the most prudent Method of proceeding to make out the Discovery, and to determine by a Majority what should then be done, and the Minority had a Right to enter their Objections or Reasons for not Assenting.

The Council was held on Board the *Dobbs*, and an Act of Council drawn up, the Purport of which was, “ That on the eleventh Instant, about Noon, we had fallen in with the Land between the Latitude 64. 00. and 63. 20. N. where we intended to search the Coast and try the Tides, but were disappointed therein by  
“ thick

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

27

“ thick Weather, and hard Gales of Wind, so August.  
“ that we could not attempt it a second Time  
“ this Season, with any hopes of Success, and  
“ finding ourselves in Sight of *Brook Cobham*  
“ which we judged to be a very favourable  
“ Place to try the true Knowledge of the Tides,  
“ we therefore resolved to send thither the two  
“ Long-Boats, ” the Lieutenant of each Ship  
was to have the Command of the Boat belonging  
to his respective Ship, and to set out with all con-  
venient Expedition for the Western Part of the  
Island, there to determine from whence the Tide  
flowed, the Course, Height, Velocity of the Tide,  
and Time of high Water ; and if a Flood Tide  
came from the Westward, and any Opening, they  
were to repair to that Place, to try the Tide  
there, if safely they could ; they were to search  
for a secure Harbour, should it be necessary to  
bring the Ships to an Anchor for a further Search.  
In case of extraordinary bad Weather the Boats  
were to repair Aboard, on Signals made, and  
Signals were fixed on for the Boats repairing  
Aboard, and for other Purposes, which the  
Lieutenants were to observe, and an Account of  
them was given in Writing for that Purpose.

It appears from Part of this Act of Council,  
which mentions the Opening, the Tide from the  
Westward, and the Harbours, that there was  
a particular View therein, to the Discoveries  
made by Lieutenant *Rankin*, when with Captain  
*Middleton* in 1742. Lieutenant *Rankin* having  
discovered

August. discovered a Cove S. W. of this Island, which, receiving its Appellation from him, is called *Rankin's Cove*, and the Island is promiscuously called *Marble Island*, or *Brook Cobham*, which Cove appeared to be a very good Harbour, he also discovered that there was a strong Tide of Flood suddenly from W. N. W. round the N. W. End of the Island, and an Opening to the Westward of the Island.

About half an Hour after nine, pursuant to the Result of the Council, the *California's* Long-Boat was ready, the fine Weather which had been all Day continuing, but the less acceptable by Reason of there being so little Wind: In the Long-Boat were the Lieutenant, the Clerk, six Hands and a Boy; the Long-Boat about seven Tun, rigged with Sloop Mast and Sails, well provided with Provision and all Necessaries, and those in her well armed; their Arms were a Defence for them against the *Eskimaux*, who also are in those Parts at this Season, though somewhat different from those on the *Labrador Coast*, neither do they come from thence. They in the Boat also, by the Means of their Fire-Arms, could procure an additional Supply of fresh Provisions to those which they already had, and of which there was a Sufficiency should the Boats be separated from the Ships, to last them as long a Time as it would take them to get to *Churchill Factory*, if they should be able to attain there.

Both

Bo  
but, i  
their  
small  
ing N  
off; ;  
oblige  
great  
any w  
large  
Boat,  
rupt t  
our P

Th  
and th  
E. by  
riation  
Fox to  
Island,  
ing of  
ved fr  
who, t  
thema  
counte  
now c  
Marble  
near, c  
low to  
scriptio  
East P  
his Shi

Both Long-Boats being ready, they set off; but, it falling calm, they returned each alongside their respective Ships. At twelve, there being a small Breeze of Wind, they set off again, steering N. E. for the Island, being five Leagues off; from the Smallness of the Wind, we were obliged sometimes to use our Oars. Seeing a great Number of Seals, and of a larger Size than any we had seen before, remarkably grey with large Whiskers; they came very near to the Boat, and were very sportive; nor did we interrupt their Diversion, not knowing how necessary our Powder might be.

This Island which is about seven Leagues long, and three over in the broadest Part, lying E. by S. and W. by N. the true bearing Variation allowed, was first discovered by Captain *Fox* to be an Island; and by him called a *White Island*, and named *Brook Cobham*, then thinking of the many Furtherances this Voyage received from that honourable Knight Sir *John Brook*, who, together with Mr. *Henry Briggs*, the Mathematical Professor at *Oxford*, were the first that countenanced him in this Undertaking. It is now called *Marble Island*, from being mostly Marble, and appearing at a Distance, as well as near, of a greyish white Colour. This Island is low to the Eastward, so answering to the Description which Captain *Fox* gives it, as to the East Part where his Boat went Ashore, and where his Ship lay off of, but by the South-East Point

N  
of

August.

of the Island, by the South, away to the South-Western-most, it gradually ascends until it comes to be a high steep Point or Scrag of greyish Stone, named by *Scroggs*, *Pitts* Mount, with some large Spots of white near, much resembling Snow, and is occasioned by the Sediments of Marble Dust, worn off and lodged there by the Washing of the Rains and melted Snows. From this Mount it stretches again away to the Westward, uneven and hilly, and the South-Western-most Point is a bold high Land.

We were at eight in the Morning about a Mile from the Island, hearing the Rut upon the Shore very plainly. The Eastern Part about a League to the Eastward of us, from thence we stood to the Westward in Search of *Rankin's* Cove, there being a Hollow in the Land about three Leagues off, we supposed that Hollow to be it. The Wind falling small, we were forced to use our Oars, not arriving off the Hollow before twelve; as we arrived nearer; it appeared less hollow; when opposite, quite even, with no Opening, and large Breakers upon the Shore. We then stood out to round a Headland, which formed a small Bay, but rowed with two Oars in half an Hour further, than we could before with our four Oars in the Hour: This we plainly perceived, and attributed it to the Tide of Ebb out of *Rankin's* Cove, which had been missed, and our being so delayed from eight to twelve, to the Tide of Flood then coming on.

We

We proceeded to stand out from the Shore August. near two Miles, opening two other Points of the Land to the Westward, we had there in View broken Lands, a bluff Point of main Land, which was N. W. by W  $\frac{1}{2}$  W. Land also W. N. W. and the Western-most Land in Sight, a Land which seemed (but looked to be low) like the Head of a Main-Land, between this Bluff and the supposed Main-Land, there seemed to be a large Inlet or Opening, with some Islands near to the high Bluff, the High-Land from the Bluff ran to the Eastward, and was shut in with the Western-most Part or Point of *Marble* Island. To make a better Observation we let go our Anchor, when our Anchor was gone, we found the Tide, by the Riding of the Buoy came Ahead from the Westward, running to the Eastward, and at the same Time perceived it had fell along Shore some Feet; this was a Contradiction to the Tide we had before experienced, and which had carried us to the Westward before we anchored, and stood so far out from the Shore. Therefore we concluded there must be two Tides here, the one an Eastern Tide which we were anchored with our Head to, for we knew it could not be that Eastern Tide, that occasioned our being so set to the Westward, and there must be consequently a different, or Western Tide, under Shore; or perhaps which was more probable, it flowed Tide and half Tide (that is, that the Flood runs still the Way of Flood, until it be half

August.

Ebb on Shore, and the Ebb runs likewise its Course in Continuance until it be half Flood upon the Shore) and we were kept in this Uncertainty, weighing soon after in compliance with the other Boat, standing round to the Westward of the Island. The Water was extremely clear, of a light green Colour, and full of Sea-Spiders.

As we coasted along the Island, we perceived on the Shore single Stones piled one upon the other; the Pile about three Feet and a half in Height, the Stones, each about the Size of a large Paving-stone: We saw also a white Whale. When we approached the Point to go to the Westward of the Island, we discovered a Reef of Rocks running out, having at first sixteen Fathoms Water, in two Ships Length but five, and then but three Fathoms, upon which we bore away into better Soundings, as six Fathoms, so continued in good Soundings; as we opened the Land going round to the Westward of the Island, we saw a Point at the West End of the Island, about two Miles, or two Miles and a half Distance; behind which, we were in Hopes of finding a Harbour, if not for the Ships, yet for the Boats, so necessary before Night, and which we had sought in vain along the South Part of the Island. When we had this Point open, we saw a level Beach-Shore, with a Deer standing on it, looking at us, this made our People eager to land, and, the other Boat consenting to it, we stood in for this Shore, and ran up to the Head of

of a  
a Ro  
Hea

So  
Boat  
small  
which  
not t  
toget  
this  
Quan  
theref  
were  
Office  
bours  
every  
of the  
two  
stragg  
with  
Variet  
Birds:  
in gre  
the Isla  
lings  
had th  
the W  
knock

This  
chiefly

of a Bay which is formed by two Points of August. a Rock ; which Rock also runs all round the Head of it.

Some of the Hands were left to look after the Boats, which they were to keep at an Anchor a small Distance from the Shore, and the others which went Ashore, being armed, were ordered not to ramble far from the Boats, and to keep together that they might not be surprized, but this Order (having seen no Natives within a Quarter of an Hour after that they were Ashore, therefore they were willing to conclude there were none) they soon disregarded ; for when the Officers were going over Land in Search of Harbours, they heard a Firing of Guns from almost every Part of the Island, now and then seeing one of the Boat's People on an Eminence, perhaps two on another ; they were all dispersed and straggling. The Game the Boat's People met with was Geese, Swans, Ducks, and a great Variety of other Wild Fowl, with some small Birds: which were moulting and breeding here in great Numbers, In the Swamps about the the Island. There were young Swans, and Goslings in the Ponds, amongst which our People had the greatest Success, as they could ford into the Water, and reach them with Cutlasses, or knock them down with Sticks.

This Island, which rises high from the Sea, is chiefly composed of a coarse Marble, it is hilly within,

August.

within, but not mountainous between these Hills, which are all Rocks of Marble, are pleasant Swades with large Ponds, and the Swades produce long Grass, Moss, Heath, and small Flowers, but no Wood or Brush of any Kind, only here and there a small twig Shrub growing from Clefs between two Stones of the Rocks; you continually see Stones, set up one upon another, such as we observed in coming round the Island; and usually on Heights, not only towards the Shores, but many in the inland Parts in Rows at a small Distance one from the other, so that it is not readily to be judged what Purpose they are set up for; had they been, on the Heights near the Shores only, they might have been supposed as Sea-marks.

We saw several plain Spots, upon which seemingly Tents had been erected, with a Quantity of Deers and other Bones lying together; here and there rotten Horns. There was also a Circle of Stones of about six Feet in Diameter, raised about two Feet high lightly pitched one on the other; there was nothing in the Manner of it neat or curious, only serving to shew that these Parts have been frequented by some People. From some of the Ponds, which were on higher Ground there are Trenches cast up about a Foot deep, and two Feet in Width, the Ground being turned to a Ridge on the one Side, as is done in making a Ditch. The Purpose of these Trenches is seemingly to discharge the Ponds, when over-  
 charged

ged with Water from Thaws or large Rains; so August. keeping the upper Land dry.

One of the Men came to the Officers and told them, that he had seen something in the Water, rolled in a great Heap together, and a great Length of it, that he had turned it, but could not tell what it was; then hastened away supposing there were Inhabitants. The Officers having got a Parcel of the People together, they went with him, but in the Pursuit, fell in with what they were before looking for, (*Rankin's Cove*) They being then to the South-West Part of the Island, saw a small Island just off the Shore, with a Roadstead on the Inside; upon which they ascend the Rocks to the left, and saw beneath them a fine Canal, about half a Mile in Length, the Sides high Marble Cliffs, not difficult of Descent; at the upper End a flat Swamp, and half Way cross the Bottom a high Marble Cliff, as on the Sides, the other Part an Opening, or Entrance, by which this Cove communicates with the Sea. but the Entrance is covered by the Island seen before crossing the Cliffs.

After taking a Survey of this Cove, (and shooting some Wild Fowl, of which there were not less than two hundred swimming at the Entrance of the Cove, but with little Advantage, having no Boat there to fetch what was killed) returned over Land towards the Boats, in order to take a View of the Inlet from the Heights at Sun-set, which

August.

which appeared then more promising. The Land to the Westward of the high Bluff, trenched away to the Westward, and the Extream of it at such a Distance as not to be terminated by the Eye: Off this Land there appeared a high Sugar-Loaf Island, with some others, beyond a clear Sea; and that Land which looked like the Head of a Main Land, forming the South Part of this Inlet, appeared at least eight Leagues from *Marble* Island, lying North and South, from the North it stretched but a little Way to the Westward; then the Land, seem'd to turn short off, and run away South; and the Sea seemingly ran away S. W.

Returning to the Boats, an Ice-Pole had been set up on the Beach for to know the Height of the Tide, pursuant to Orders left. And the *Dobbs* Long-Boat, it being then Flood-Tide, went off to try it, but making this Trial of the Tide within the Channel, between the Main and *Marble* Island, they found it came agreeable to the Course of the Channel, from the Eastward, running five Fathoms; but this Trial, as it was to the Eastward of the Bluff, gave no Satisfaction as to what Tide came out from the Inlet; or what Course this Tide took when clear of the Channel; or what Course it had before it entered such Channel; though it was discernable from the Heights, that, when clear of the Channel, the Tide set round the South End of *Marble* Island to the Eastward. This Channel is formed by the West End of *Marble* Island, and the Shore running

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

97.

running to the Eastward of the said Bluff; which appeared to be a continued Main. The Channel is nine Leagues in Length, and three Leagues Broad, having an Island in the Middle. August.

While the Boat was gone, those left behind were employed in Cooking; there having been no Victuals dressed since their leaving the Ships. Besides the Fuel which they had in the Boats, they picked up drift Wood along the Shores amongst which, they light upon a Piece of Oak about two Feet in Length, with such Trunnel Holes as are made in Ships Sides, and an Edge to it where it had been caulked, there was also picked up, the Stave of a Buoy, about the Size of a Barrel Stave; in all probability they were Part of the Remains of the Wreck of the Ships in which Mr. *Knight*, and Mr. *Barlow*, who were fitted out by the *Hudson's Bay Company* in the Year 1720, to make a Discovery, were lost; and it was on this Island that Mr. *Scroggs's* People, who were sent from *Churchill*, to make some Inquiry after these Ships in the Year 1722, saw a Piece of the Lining of the Cabin, the Medicine Chest, the Ice-Poles, and Part of the Mast in Possession of the *Eskemaux*, nor would the *Eskemaux* trade any Iron; what also adds to these Probabilities is, that there are few Coasts in the World, upon which (as we afterwards found) an Accident of this Kind could be sooner expected.

August.

What became of the People is also uncertain, *Scroggs* thought that some of them were drowned, and that others had suffered in a Fray with the *Eskemaux*, one of the *Eskemaux* having a large Scar on his Cheek, like a Cut with a Cutlash, and at that Time a green Wound; but Captain *Smith* mentions, that when he traded with the *Eskemaux* at *Whale Cove*, they used to shew him a young Lad, and call him *English Man*, alluding to his being an *English* Man, whose Age was seemingly suitable to the Time of these Peoples Misfortune, the Lad appeared as of a mixed Breed, which makes it probable that one or more of the People might get Ashore and live some-time amongst the *Eskemaux*, after the Accident; as long possibly as they could with eating their Diet, and the Nature of the Climate.

15th.

We supped that Night on the Rock, cold and unpleasant, and went on Board the Boats at twelve; having seen the Height of the Tide which was ten Feet. In the Morning proposed searching *Rankin's Cove*, and two others to the Northward and Eastward of that in which the Boats were; afterwards to repair to the Ships which we saw in the Evening. But there coming on a thick wet Fog, which did not clear until eight and then for so small a Time, as only to admit us to run into one of the other Coves, and there being little Prospect of the Fog clearing on the Water, so as we could pursue our intended Design;

Design; we walked over to *Rankin's Cove*, and from thence to where the Pole stood, which had been set up the Night before for the Trial of the Tide. Finding at *Rankin's Cove* that it was about high Water, and where the Pole stood that it was Ebb, having flowed as we could conjecture from the Pole (it not being marked) much about the same as the Night before; and high Water then, *August* the 15th at twelve: So it appear'd to be one and the same Tide at where the Pole stood, and at *Rankin's Cove*.

About one (clearer Weather) returned to the Boats, we heard four Guns on the North-East Part of the Island, as we supposed, which was a peremptory Signal for our coming off, and accordingly set out with the Long-Boats. The Long-Boat of the *California* standing out much further than the *Dobbs* Long-Boat, almost to the Island in the Mid-Channel, found a stronger Tide there, (hoisting to the Eastward) than was nearer to *Marble* Island. The Boat getting far Ahead of the other. What this Tide was we were incapable of judging, not being nigh enough the Shore of the Island in the Mid-Channel, to know whether it was Flood or Ebb, though we knew the Tide under *Marble* Island to be Ebb, but this seem'd a distinct Tide from that; if it was but one Tide, we then supposed it flow'd Tide and half Tide, and that it was the Strength of the Ebb which we were got in, by the Help of which we could have got Aboard the Ships or

August,

round to *Rankin's Cove*. But the other Boat by keeping in Shoar could not, and not willing to separate we stood back for them, and both Boats returned to the Cove we came from. Where (not pleased with the last Nights Accomodation having no better Lodging than in the Sails, which were soon wet with the Fog) we erected a Tent; setting up the Oars, and Ice Poles, and covering them with a Sale, making a Fire in the Middle, there being an opening at the Top of the Tent, where the Oars and Ice Poles met to let out the Smoak, round the Fire, we strewed'd dry Grasse, which the People cut down with Cutlashes. Our Situation was under a Rock, which covered us from the Wind, on a pleasant Rising Swade, that run up a long Way above us, and the Tent had a full View of the Boats, and the Water, about two Hundred Yards below. This Tent held both Boats Company excepting four, who by Lot had the care of the Boats. The Ships were seen in the Evening, three Leagues off the Shore, bearing S. W. by S.

16th.

This Night pleasant agreeable Weather as in the Afternoon before, was spent more comfortably then the proceeding, at four the next Morning fine pleasant Weather, the Tent struck, and things Aboard the Boats, one of which, the *Dobb's* Boat being got so far a Ground as not to be able to get off until the Flood, the other Boat set out for *Rankin's Cove*, to make a full Discovery

very  
*Dobb's*  
 Two  
 make  
*Rankin's*  
 which  
 ward  
 it wa  
 obser  
 which  
 Shoar  
 at ab  
 befor  
 with  
 pear  
 of th  
 And  
 Cov

T  
 tere  
 such  
 disc  
 it tw  
 bou  
 the  
 Wa  
 ing  
 Cov  
 Bot  
 off  
 tha

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

101

very of that, and there wait the Arrival of the *Dobbs's* Boat, as soon as the Tide would admit. Two of the *California's* People went over Land to make Signal of the Heights to the Boat, when off *Rankin's* Coves Mouth; and to shew by which Entrance, either to the Eastward or Westward of the Island, that lay off the Coves Mouth, it was proper for the Boat to come in at. They observed that to the Westward of such Island, which lay off the Coves Mouth, there was a flat Shoal, the Tide breaking fast upon it, and that at about a Quarter before nine, and at a Quarter before ten, the Tide came in over such a Shoal with a kind of Rush, until which Time there appeared no Tide at the Entrance to the Eastward of this Island, as there did immediately after. And then also the Flood was perceptible in the Cove.

The Boat, according to the Signal made, entered by such Eastern Entrance, which without such Signal, it would have been difficult to have discovered it, as we had experienced in passing it two Days before. They entered the Cove, at about a Quarter after ten, founded it, found at the Mouth of it, at going in, not above six Feet Water, the Entrance very Narrow, not exceeding in width the Length of two Ships, and in the Cove found twenty one Fathoms Water, Sandy Bottom, owing to the melting Snows and Waters off the Land, not the Influx of the Sea, which that Day flowed but six Feet, as we observed by

the

August.

the Shore; and when we came at one o'Clock out of *Rankin's* Cove, in Company with the other Boat (which had before joined us) we then found at the Entrance, and the Tide only upon the Turn, no more then from thirteen to fourteen Feet Water.

Two of the People, who had been on the Heights to look out for the Ships, which had hoisted a Signal, for our coming Aboard, saw two Whales coming from the Westward. The Ships, were about three Leagues off and lying by, at two they saw us, and bore away for us; at three we were alongside after an unpleasant Voyage, the Weather being changed to cloudy, with a fresh Gale, and great Surf of the Sea, upon our first standing out from the Shore.

Upon our Return, the Lieutenant of the *California* made his Report of their being no Harbour. The Entrance to *Rankin's* Cove too shallow to admit Ships into the Cove, and the other Coves seen to Westward of the Island, fit only for anchoring small Vessels, which Report he was ordered to put in writing; together with what Observations he had made as to the Tides, to be laid before the Council, which accordingly met that Evening Aboard the *California*, when the Report was produced. But no Report on the Part of the Lieutenant of the *Dobbs*, who was appointed by Council to act as Chief in that Affair, but some Notes read by the *Draftsman* as his own, which were agree-  
able

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

103

able to the Report made by the Lieutenant of the *August*, *California*; and the *Draftsman* was at more leisure, to form a Report from them; but such Report if drawn up was never given in.

After hearing the Report and Notes, It was then proposed that the Ships should hold up eight and forty Hours, in hopes of a better Opportunity, the Wind being then contrary, to try the Inlet, which Captain *Smith* opposed. Though the Proposal was seemingly proper, suiting with the Service we were sent on, and with the Inclination of every one; yet in reality it was not practicable without running an extream Hazard. For as it was proposed; that the Ships should go in amongst broken Lands, where there was a number of Shoals and Rocks and all unknown; when the Nights were Dark, and it was a Season for thick Weather with Gales of Wind; there would be little or no possibility of those Ships being kept clear, from going on such Shoals or Rocks, by reason of the Darknes of the Nights, the Thicknes of the Weather, or from the Force of Winds; the Consequence of which would be the Loss of the Ships, and of all those that were in them. There was an Instance, of this Kind in those unfortunate Gentlemen *Knight* and *Barlow*. For to nothing can their Loss, and of those that were with them, be so properly attributed as to their late coming into these Parts, and their then going in amongst the broken Lands, with their Ships, and their Ships being their set a Ground,

or

August.

or on the Shoals, or Rocks, either from the Darkness of the Night, the thicknets of the Weather, or a Gale of Wind. The Circumstance of the Buoy Stave found at Marble Island, as mentioned; and the Things found by *Scroggs*, at the same Place; all make it probable, that this very Inlet, or the broken Lands near, was the Place where the Misfortune happened. It was therefore more prudent, not to hazard all, but to defer the proceeding amongst such Lands, to a more seasonable Opportunity, and to pursue at present (what was more suiting with the Time of the Year) the going to Winter Quarters, and preparing for Wintering.

What was observed upon Survey amongst these very broken Lands the next Year; was an Evidence afterwards of the good Judgment with which an Opposition was made. For we were sensible upon such Survey, that had we ventured in with the Lands, agreeable to the Proposal, there was the highest Probability, had the Weather been any otherwise than moderate, we must have perished.

The Winter was not far off! The Ships must go to the South Part of the Bay, to seek a Harbour, if a convenient Harbour was not found in *Port Nelson* River; they would then be obliged to go to *Churchill*, the Ships were to be unrigged, the Stores taken out. Houses built for wintering, and Fuel provided. All which would be a Work of some Time, and if left until the Winter began, would

would be attended with some Difficulties; if the August. Harboursing the Ships was left until that Time, it would be to the great Hazard of them both. But the best Judgment of what was the right Time for going to Wintering, is to be deduced from observing what hath been done by others in the like Case; and what was consequent on their Proceedings.

*Hudson, Button, Monk, and James*, all wintered. *Hudson*, who wintered in a low Latitude in the South Part of the Bay, harboured his Ship the Beginning of *November*, and she was froze up the tenth. <sup>a</sup> It caused great Labour to build a House, which they did not afterwards inhabit, and suffered very much. <sup>b</sup> *Sir Thomas Button* having been drove to the Southward by a Storm, and constrained to look for a Harbour, got into a Creek on the North Side of *Port Nelson* River (so named by him after his Master, whom he buried there) on the 13th of *August*, to repair some Losses; after that Time came on the new Winter, with much stormy Weather; as he was constrained to winter there, wintering in his Ship, he suffering very much according to *Capt. Fox's* Account, for Want of a proper Provision of Fuel. *Captain Monk* wintered at *Churchill*, Latitude 59. as is evident not only from the Cannon found there, marked with *King Christianus's* Mark C4. <sup>c</sup> But from the Relation of the Voyage,

<sup>a</sup> *Pricket's Account of Hudson's Voyage, North-West. Fox P. 79.* <sup>b</sup> *North-West, Fox P. 118. p. 248.* <sup>c</sup> 2d Vol. of *Churchill's Voyages. An Account of Greenland. P. 475.*

August. which mentions this People's providing Wood; whereas in Latitude  $63^{\circ} 20''$ . the Place said to be his Wintering-Place, there is no Wood, and, on the other Hand at *Churcbill*, there was at that Time plenty of Wood, also at the first settling o *Churcbill* they found Hutts with Human Bones in them, which agrees with the Relation, that such of *Monk's* People as died were forced to be left above Ground, for Want of Strength in the others to bury them. Captain *Monk* harboured his Ship the seventh of *September*, be- behind some Rocks in a Bay at the Entrance of a River (which Description agrees also with *Churcbill*.) They afterwards built themselves Huts, and provided Fuel against the Winter. And the principal Cause of the Mortality which happened (only himself and two more being left alive out of sixty-five Persons) was their Want of Provision to support themselves with, in the Se- verity of the Season. <sup>a</sup> Captain *James* began his Wintering the fourth of *October* at *Charlton* Island, by his own Observation Latitude  $52. 00$ . his Ship in great Hazard, and on the twenty-ninth of *November*, he sunk his Ship as the most effec- tual Way of securing her, he and his People suffering a great Fatigue in getting the Pro- visions and Necessaries Ashore, and providing Houses, &c. In the Travels of the *Missioners*, there is an Account by Father *Gabriel Mareft*, a Jesuit, of the Difficulties they met with to har-

<sup>a</sup> Voyage of Captain *James*, P. 45.

bour two Ships; the one in *Hays's* River by *York-Fort*, in *Hudson's* Bay, which the *French* call *St. Teresa*; and to harbour the other Ship in *Port Nelson* River, by the *French*, called *Bourbon* River. This was upon an Expedition of the *French* to take *York Fort*, in the Year 1694, he says (the Ship he was Aboard of having entered *Hays's* River) the thirtieth of *September*, " We could not possibly advance, on the first of *October* we continued in the same Condition, the Wind being still contrary, our Vessel aground at low Water, and there being no Possibility of Tacking; in the mean Time, the Wind, the Cold, and Ice increased every Day; we were within a League of the Place where we were to land, and in Danger of not being able to reach it. On the second of *October* (they having passed the Factory, and advanced higher up the Night before) our Ship, says the Father, had like to have perished. As we were making ready, and were in Hopes to be very soon in the Port, which we could almost reach, a great Cloud of Snow took away from us the Sight of the Land, and a strong Gust of Wind at N. W. cast us on a Shoal where we stuck at high Water, there we had a dismal Night; about ten the said Night, the Ice carried by the Stream, and pushed on by the Wind, began to beat against our Ship with such a dreadful Force and Noise, that it might have been heard a League off, which Battery lasted four

August. “ or five Hours: The Ice beat the Ship so  
 “ violently that it cut the Planks, and in several  
 “ Places they were rubbed off four Inches deep.  
 “ Monsieur *d' Iberville* (who commanded in  
 “ that Expedition) caused twelve Pieces of Can-  
 “ non, and several other things which could not  
 “ be lost, or spoiled in the Water, to be thrown  
 “ over-board to lighten the Ship, and afterwards  
 “ had those Pieces of Cannon covered with Sand,  
 “ for fear they should be carried away in the  
 “ Spring by the Force of the Sea.

“ The third, the Wind somewhat abating,  
 “ Monsieur *d' Iberville* concluded to unlade his  
 “ Ship, which was still in Danger of Perishing;  
 “ we could not make use of the Long-Boat for  
 “ that Service, there being no Possibility of car-  
 “ rying it across the Ice, which still came on in  
 “ great Quantities; but we used the Canoes  
 “ made of Bark, which we had brought from  
 “ *Quebeck*, and which our *Canadians* conveyed  
 “ athwart the Ice, with wonderful Dexterity.

“ We had heard of the *Poli* (the other Ship  
 “ seeking a Harbour in *Port Nelson* River) and  
 “ were informed that Ship was in no less Danger  
 “ than ours. The Wind, the Ice, and the Shoals  
 “ had all conspired against it. Once it ran a  
 “ Ground, and a great Piece of the Keel had been  
 “ carried away, so that four Pumps would not  
 “ discharge the Water it made. Several Barrels  
 “ of Powder had taken wet in unloading of the  
 “ Vessel.

“ Vessel. It was not yet come to the Place August.  
“ where it should have wintered, and there was  
“ Danger that it could not be carried up thither.”

But to return to our Council : The Proposal of holding up for eight-and-forty Hours for trying the Inlet was so popular, that no one opposed it but Capt. *Smith* and his Lieutenant ; and accordingly an Act of Council was drawn up, agreeable to the Proposal : But, when offered to be signed, then one seemed backward, afterwards a Second ; and at last they all declined Signing such Act.

The next Day a Council again met on board the *California*, when all the Members were present, except the Surgeon of the *Dobbs*, and the Consent was general for bearing away for Winter-Quarters ; nothing more proposed for trying the Inlet, but mentioned by all as an improper and hazardous Attempt : It was also proposed by the *Draftsman*, that the Act of Council made the Night before, and unsigned, should be torn out of the Book it was wrote in, and burned ; but this was opposed by Capt. *Smith*, who insisted upon such Act remaining in the Book.

*Port-Nelson* River was the Place pitched on for Wintering, there being a Probability of our finding a Harbour, as a *French* Man of War, of fifty Guns, had wintered there when *York* Fort was in their Possession ; and the Reasons  
for

August. for preferring Port *Nelson* to *Cburcbill* were, because that River broke up some Weeks sooner than the River at *Cburcbill*. Port *Nelson* is in a better Climate, a Country more abounding with Game, greater Plenty of Wood, and, being near *York* Fort, which is the principal Factory of the *Hudson's* Bay Company, there would be a Probability of getting more *Indians* there to hunt for us than we should at *Cburcbill*, being an inferior Factory.

In neither of these Councils had it been put as a Question, whether it would be proper to return to *England*; for there was a fine Inlet, and every one knew from the Trial which had been made in the Boat of the Tide, that a Tide came round the West End of *Marble* Island, which they inferred was from Inlets to N. W. of the Island; and comparing the Observations those in the Boats had made of the Tides when to Southward of the Island, and what had been experienced on board the Ships when also to Southward of such Island, the Ships having been carried the 15th at Night, then a Calm, greatly to the Eastward by the Flood-Tide, concluded, that there was (besides that Western Tide round the Island, and from the Inlets to N. W.) a Western Tide likewise out of this Inlet, which they had discovered to South-Westward or *Rankin's* Inlet, and that these Tides could be no other than from a Western Ocean; therefore, it would be better to stay the Winter, that we might be ready to pro-

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

111

proceed in Spring; whereas, if we returned to *England*, we might be as late in the following Year as we were in this; so equally unable to proceed then as we were now. August.

These seemed to be the Reasons which were conclusive with every one for Wintering, as not the least Question was made about it, as to whether it was not properer to return to *England* than winter here. There was one Objection started as to Wintering, but that was upon a different Account, as that it would not be proper to winter, the People not having suitable Cloathing; and this was an Objection started by one Person only.

About One in the Morning, *August* the Twenty-sixth, the Tide making down, both *the 16th.* Ships came to an Anchor at the Entrance of *Hays's* River, in five Fathom, Water; and the Noon before we had anchored off *Port Nelson* Shoals, the first anchoring since our leaving the *Orkneys* on the Twelfth of *June*; having had but few Hours between the Seventeenth of this Instant, the Time we bore away for Winter-Quarters, and the Time of our anchoring, either of sunshiny and clear, or moderate Weather; mostly cloudy and hazy, Rain and Sleet, with some Snow, strong Winds, or Squally; seeing several Flights of Plover and Geese making to the Southward, the Signs of an approaching Winter in the Parts we were passing by; but when

August. when we came near to the Land to the Southward, seeing a Number of white Whales, concluded Winter would not yet begin there. It was very cold all our Way down the Bay, but on our Approach to the Land we had it temperate. The Sea in our Passage down was of various Colours.

The Place of our Anchoring was in a Bay, into which there fell two great Rivers (Port Nelson River, and, to the Southward of that, *Hays's* River) which Rivers are parted from each other by a low Slip of Land, on which is *York Fort* Factory; and this Land, being an Island, is called *Hays's* Island. The Channels of these Rivers, after they are passed *Hays's* Island, are kept separate, until they have run some Distance into this Bay by Shoals, one of which begins at the Foot of *Hays's* Island, and is dry at Low-Water; other Shoals join that, which are covered at all Times with Water. These Shoals run to the Northward more than three Leagues. The N. of *Hays's* Island is Lat.  $57^{\circ} 30''$ . The N. E. Point of this Bay, where it empties into *Hudson's* Bay, which is Cape *Tatnam*, is in Lat.  $57^{\circ} 48''$  Long.  $91^{\circ} 30''$ . The other Point to N. W. of this Bay, which is Port *Nelson* Shoals, is in Lat.  $58^{\circ} 00$ . Long.  $92^{\circ} 40''$ . Those Channels, while divided, are not two Leagues distant from each other in the widest Parts of the Shoals, with Cuts through as would admit Ships to pass from one River to the other.

Port

Pe  
Sir T  
fter,  
Fox  
Fox  
New  
Thom  
had b  
or pu  
he ca  
of L  
purp  
mas h  
raifec  
his S  
Jame  
Princ  
New  
Nelson  
and A  
cover  
Disco

TH  
extre  
been  
to m  
Mile  
low I  
the S

\* Ne  
discove

Port *Nelson* River was at first discovered by August. Sir *Thomas Button*, and named after his Master, as mentioned, who died there. <sup>a</sup> Capt. *Fox* and <sup>b</sup> Capt. *James* were both here. Capt. *Fox* was first, and landed, naming the Land *New Yorkshire*. Was also at the Spot where Sir *Thomas* had wintered, and finding a Cross which had been erected by Sir *Thomas*, but now fallen, or pulled down, with the Inscription rased out, he caused the Cross to be new raised, and a Piece of Lead nailed on, with an Inscription thereon, purporting, Capt. *Fox* supposed that Sir *Thomas* had first erected such Cross, and it was now raised again by him, in Right and Possession of his Sovereign, *August 15*, in the Year 1634. Capt. *James*, though not ashoar, named this Land the Principality of *Wales*, and in the Charts it is called *New South-Wales*. The *French* called *Port Nelson* River the River *Bourbon*, as mentioned; and *Hays's* River, which they were the first Discoverers of, they named *St. Teresa*, because the Discoverer's Wife bore the Name of that Saint.

The Morning of the 26th, after Sun-rise, was extremely pleasant; and the barren Views we had been so long entertained with, greatly contributed to make the Land, which we now lay about a Mile and Half off, to look the more agreeable. low Land, with Woods, at some Distance from the Shore, looking pleasantly green. Between

<sup>a</sup> North-West, *Fox*, p. 217. <sup>b</sup> Capt. *James's* Voyage for discovering a Passage to the *South Sea*, p. 25.

August.

the Woods and Shore a low Marsh. About Six Capt. *Smith* went off in his Pinnace, attended by Capt. *Moor's* Mate in the *Dobbs's* Pinnace, to search for the Spot where the Ships were to anchor, while a Harbour was searched for; being to be followed by the Ships, with the Long-boats a-head to sound, when the Tide should make; the Channel being shallow and difficult, not to be attempted by those who do not know it, as a Mistake may be the Loss of a Ship, and a Knowledge of the Channel some Years before will not do for a Time after, by reason that the Channel so often alters from the Shifting of the Shoals; which Altering of the Channel greatly contributes to the Security of the Factory against the Enemy.

The Pinnaces lay upon the Spot where the Ships were to anchor, and at Four in the Afternoon the *California* arrived there. The *Dobbs*, touching the Ground about Three, struck; and the Tide being on the Turn, could not, in Spite of all Endeavours, both Long-Boats being sent to assist her, get off that Tide. We came into this Road with our Ensign out; and on our Anchoring, saluted the Factory at about seven Miles off, with seven Guns; which was taken no Notice off; but while we were in our Passage up, the Factory fired a single Gun, which we supposed to be, as it was, an Alarm-Gun for their People to come in. About Five we discerned their Boat busy in sinking or taking up a couple of Buoys; and when that was done, they came

came towards the Ship to cut down a Beacon that August. was set upon a Pile of Stones at the Edge of the large Shoal before-mentioned to the Northward of *Hays's* Island, and which dried at Low Water, and which the Ship now lay off of, and this Beacon was to shew the Spot we were then at Anchor upon. Capt. *Smith*, apprehending this, manned his Pinnace with four Oars, and put in only two Sitters, that those in the Factory Boat might not apprehend any Annoyance; giving Orders to his People to desire those in the Factory Boat not to cut the Beacon down until the other Ship came up. But by the Time that Capt. *Smith's* Boat joined the Factory Boat, two of the Factory People were got on Shore on the Pile of Stones; and those in the Boat being desired not to let them cut down the Beacon, they said it was the *Governor's* Orders. Being ask'd if they knew who we were, one replied, Yes, I knew it to be Capt. *Smith*, when I came near enough to see him; and it being said to that, Why do you cut down the Beacon then? The Answer was, It is the *Governor's* Order, and how did we know but you were *French*? You have been in the Offing these three or four Days firing of Guns; we have been forced to keep half Watch every Night. Now it was no way probable, whatever their Fears might present to them, that the *French* would make their Signals for Tacking or Lying by (which was the Meaning of the Guns fired between the two Ships, and which they heard) when they were so near

August. their Enemies Coast. Nor would the *Governor*, had he not been well satisfied who we were, before they came with their Boat to have a plain View of the Ship, to inform them, have sent them on such an Expedition as the Cutting down a Beacon within Pistol-Shot of an Enemy's Ship of Force.

It was, as we then supposed, and afterwards learned, the Effect of Passion. The Indians who first saw us said there were four Ships, two great ones and two little ones. The little ones were the Long-Boats, which loomed by their Fears and the Weather to be no less than Bombketches, the Ships two Men of War. The Discoverers were known to be two Ships only; here were four, so it could not be them. The Alarm was sent into the Country for all the Factory People to come Home, every thing prepared for Defence, when in the Interim the *Governor* had certain Intelligence of our being Friends, and angry at the Surprize we had put him into, to vent his Spleen, issued these Orders for taking up the Buoys, and cutting down the Beacon; and at this those in the Factory Boat seemed to hint, when they asked the People in Capt. *Smith's* Boat (who were desiring them not to cut down the Beacon) why then, say the Factory People, had there not been a Boat sent up to the *Governor*? Which was excused by saying, that the Long-Boat was sent to Capt. *Moor's* Assistance, and there was but the Pinnace besides; but in the

Morn-

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

117

August.

Morning a Boat would be sent up. This Conversation was, while the two Men on Shore on the Pile of Stones were busy in cutting down the Beacon; and when they finished their Work, they returned to the Boat, and rowed away; having been first desired to call aboard the Ship, which they excused themselves from, with saying they had not Time.

We learned from them, that the *Hudson's Bay* Ships, bound for that Fort, had been for some Days gone for *England*: That the *Hudson's Bay* Ships, whom we had parted with on the seventeenth of *June* at Night, had not entered the Streights until nine Days after us, but had been more fortunate in passing them, having never made fast to Ice but once, that somewhere about *Mansell* Island. Capt. *Smith's* Boat returned Aboard with the Beacon in Tow, being a fine straight Piece of Pine, with a good Brush or Broom at the End.

We had the Satisfaction of hearing that Night of the *Dobbs* being safe, being on a hard Ground and upright, though it was dry all about her; they had been staving the Water aboard her, in order to lighten her aft, not doubting to get off the next Tide. Capt. *Smith* also promised to hoist two Lights at his Fore-top-sail Yard-arm, one at each Extreme, as a Direction for her in the Night.

The

August 27. The *Dobbs* got off in the Night, but did not join us. Next Morning Capt. *Smith* went down to bring her up, and about twelve the *Dobbs* came to an Anchor, just astern of the *California*; then saluted the Factory with seven Guns, which were not answered by the Factory; but in the Morning the Factory had fired three single Guns, and at a Distance of Time the one from the other, though on what Account we could not tell.

In the Afternoon a Boat arriving from the Factory, those in her bringing a Letter from the *Governor*, a Council was called on Board of the *Dobbs*, to consider of such Letter; wherein the *Governor* tells the Commanders, not to come higher with the Ships at their Peril, unless shewing a proper Authority from the Government, or the Company trading in those Parts. As to the *Hudson's Bay Company*, the Captains had no Authority from them; what they had from the Act of Parliament made in Favour of this Expedition no one could tell, not having it with them; and as to any other Authority, no one of the Council knew where to seek it, until shewn by Capt. *Smith*, in a Clause of the Commissions which both Ships had as Privateers, and by which they had a Right to any Assistance that that Port could supply them with, and by Consequence, could not be opposed in going to harbour where the Commanders pleased; though it was not the Intention that the Ships should go higher up, being

being only to wait there, where they were at Anchor, until a Harbour was found in Port Nelson River. August.

A Letter was wrote, and two Persons, one from each Ship, went with it, carrying also the two Privateer Commissions. They went in the Factory Boat, one of the Ship's Boats attending, to bring them back. The *Governor* fired twice or thrice while they were on their Way, which was a private Signal between him and his People. The two Deputies being landed three Miles short of the Factory, had a very dirty muddy Walk, and, when arrived, as indifferent a Reception; which being complained of, the People at the Factory replied, that the Example had been set by the Treatment their People received when Aboard Capt. *Moor*. The Deputies returned about Twelve at Night, with a Letter from the *Governor* and Council, whereby he invites the Captains to the Factory, that he might know their Wants, and consult with respect to their Wintering. What he meant by knowing their Wants, and another Expression in his Letter, calling the Ships his Majesty's Ships, I never understood, unless led into it by some Expression in the Letter the Deputies carried; a Copy of which I never saw, Capt. *Moor* at all Times refusing to give one to Capt. *Smith*.

The next Morning *August* the Twenty-eighth, 28th. the Long-Boat of the *California*, and the Pinnace being

August. belonging to the *Dobbs*, set out to search for a Channel through the Shoals or Flats to Port *Nelson* River, and to return by the next Tide. The two Captains went up to the Factory, where the *Governor* declared, that the Ships should not come above the Factory, and that if they attempted it, he would fire at them; but that the Boats might. Capt. *Smith* defied him, and told him, that if he should fire at his Ship he would return it: And the *Governor* being asked as to his giving his Advice as to a proper Place to winter in, agreeable to his Letter, said, he must be excused; the *Governor* looking on it as a certain Consequence, that if the Ships came above the Factory, they would intercept his Trade, the major Part of which would be come down that River before the Ships could get out; but, as already mentioned, Capt. *Smith* had no Thoughts at that Time but of Wintering in Port *Nelson*, so not of going above the Factory; but would not be prevented by the *Governor* if he thought it necessary.

The Boats returned from the Search that Evening, those in them giving an Account that there was a Channel through the Flats, though not a great Depth of Water, yet a Sufficiency, and a fine Channel when in Port *Nelson* River. Capt. *Moor* and Capt. *Smith* set out the next Morning, with both Ships Long-Boats and Pinnaces, to take a better Survey of such Channel, and find a Harbour on the North Side of Port *Nelson* River, where

where they might go free from the Ice and the Spring Deluge, which sometimes happens, occasioned by the Suddenness of the Thaw, and the Stoppage of the Ice, with terrible Accounts of which Deluges the People at the Factory had entertained our Men, who went with the Captains to the Factory the Day before; telling them, as though it was certainly consequent, should the Ships winter above the Factory, of their having a Deluge, as there was one annually above the Factory, no Spring without. The Captains were Abroad all that Night, but the next Afternoon, <sup>30th.</sup> about four, we saw the Boats coming. Soon after Sun-set a Canoe came and lay off a small Distance from the Ship, those in her haling us in *English*, with, *What Cbear?* They were answered, and three *Indians* came, with their Canoe, Alongside, telling us, they had Geese, and when Aboard, brought thre out of a large greasy Leather Satchel, picked and dressed; for which they had a Bottle of *Indian Brandy*, the Name given for two Thirds of Brandy, and one of Water. Said, that they were at *Albany*, did not like the People there, so were come here, and now they were going from hence Southward, in Pursuit of Winter-Quarters, with their Families; for they had been employed by the Governor to shoot Geese, but the Geese not coming in Plenty, and there not being a sufficient Employ, he had discharged them. Capt. *Smith* hearing this when he came Aboard, agreed with them to come and shoot all Winter, on such Terms as they approved;

August.

proved; though they said, they must first go Southward, and they would soon return; and if they met any of their Friends, as they probably might, they would bring them with them to hunt. They were also desired to bring Venison, which they promised, on such Terms as was great for them, a Buck for two Bottles of Brandy. They had Pipes and Tobacco given them, with Liquor, and whatever was thought would please, they behaving very civilly on their Part; staid all Night, lying on the Deck, and until the Afternoon of the next Day, feeding on Grout, which is Oatmeal, boiled to a Thickness, sweetened with Moloffus. They were three young Fellows, one much superior to the other two, and better habited, the others very meanly. In the Afternoon they went ashore in the Boats, as there was a small Sea, the Canoe towing after, all the Boats going in Search of a Harbour in *Harp* River, or on the Shore to Eastward; what had been done the three Days before with so much Fatigue, and the Night the Captains were out at Port *Nelson*, spending it on the Ground, with only a Fire before them, to protect them from the Cold, and Musketoes, turning out to no Effect, by the obstinate Resolution of Capt. *Moor*, that his Ship should not go through the Channel which they had found, though Capt. *Smith* offered to carry his Ship first, and fetch the *Dobbs* afterwards. Capt. *Moor* was also determined that his Ship should not return over the Shoals the Way she had come in until next Year, to proceed upon the Discovery, and

and not that Year to enter Port *Nelson* River by the Mouth of it. And Capt. *Smith*, though he was sensible how good a Harbour they had found on the North Shore of Port *Nelson* River, usually called *Guillam's* Creek, how much better it would be Wintering under this Shore than any where in *Hays's* River, was also sensible they were likely to get out sooner in the Year, and should have the *Governor* of *York* Fort on better Terms than at any other Place, as here they could have a greater Intercourse with the *Indians*, (a Thing which the *Governor* so much feared) than any where else; yet, as no Arguments could prevail with Capt. *Moor*, he was forced to comply, thinking it best that the Ships should not separate.

While the *Indians* were Aboard, there came some of the Factory People Alongside, and, after much Perswasion, were prevailed with to come Aboard, making but a short Stay, pretending, that the *Governor* knew nothing of this their Visit; though it was rather suspected they came to learn what had been done in the last Voyage made in the Boats.

When the Boats set out to search for a Harbour, the thirty-first in the Afternoon, in *Hays's* 3<sup>rd</sup> River, it was agreed that Capt. *Moor* should go with his Boats above the Factory, and Capt. *Smith* to search for a Creek he had heard of on the Eastern Shore; but there was so soon a Shallowing of the Water as Capt. *Smith* approached

August.

that Shore, that he was sensible no Ship could stand in for a Harbour there; and putting the *Indians* into their Canoe, saw them arrive safe, take it on their Shoulders, and walk over Land. The Boats then were ordered to follow Capt. *Moor*, who was gone above the Factory; upon our coming near which, the *Governor* fired a Shot, as we supposed to bring us to; upon which Capt. *Smith* went ashore with one of the Boats, sending the other, as intended, after Capt. *Moor*. The *Governor* excused his firing, with saying, it was a Signal for the *Churchill* Sloop to come in, which he thought he espied in the Offing, and might be fearful to venture in, on seeing our two Ships.

The Factory is placed about three Miles from the North End of the Island, and, on the Eastern Side, *Hays's* River running close before it; which River, and Port *Nelson*, glide in one, until separated by this Island; then forming two Rivers, one on each Side the Island, as mentioned. The Island but low Land, and, from the Point of the Island to the Factory, a flat, gravel, and muddy Shore, with a Bank within of a bluish Marle, well covered with Poplar, Pine, and Alder; the Yellow of whose Flower, mixed with the Green of the Fir and Poplar, looked pleasanter than any Thing that could be expected to be found in these Parts.

Sept 1.

The next Day, *September* the first, the *California* (those in the Boat having discovered there

was

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

125

was a Channel some Way above the Factory, tho' September. intricate, and Capt. Moor giving an Account of a Creek which would be suitable) weighed, and stood nearer to the Factory, there to lighten; which was immediately began upon.

The next Morning, *September* the second, the 2d *Governor* sent a Message, desiring Capt. *Smith* to send his Boat, with Somebody, to let him know where he intended to lay his Ship. This Message was succeeded by a Letter brought by some from the Factory, in which the *Governor* mentions, if we would not winter the Ships above a Place there mentioned, and below the Factory, he would assist us as far as lay in his Power, and was consistent with his Orders from the Company.

The Person who brought the Message had been many Years here, so it might be presumed, from his Experience, that he well know the Nature of the Country. Under that Pretence he pointed out a Place as from his own Observation, fit for our Wintering, which was at the Extreme of the Island, and called, the *Point of Marsh*, asserting it better than any Place above the Factory; as no Accident could be from the breaking up of the Ice, which there always goes away after an easy Manner, nor no Fear from a Deluge; and both one and the other might be expected, to the Destruction of the Ships, in Wintering any where above the Factory.

The

September. The Message and Letter Capt. *Smith* answered, for the present, with saying, he would speak to Capt. *Moor*, whom he expecte<sup>d</sup> would bring up his Ship that Afternoon; then he would send the *Governor* an Answer. But, prevented by the Weather, it was the next Morning before the

3<sup>d</sup> *Dobbs* could join us; and that Afternoon the Point of *Marsh* was viewed by the Captains and the whole Council; but gave so little Satisfaction, that Capt. *Smith*, and some others, (though Capt. *Moor* was willing to acquiesce with it, as a proper Place for laying the Ships) that, on the next Morning, September the fourth, the two Captains set out in their Boats, to search for another

4<sup>th</sup> Harbour, first sending the *Governor* an Answer to his Letter, which I never saw a Copy of, it being refused Capt. *Smith*; but, by the Report of the Person who carried it, the *Governor* expressed himself well satisfied, promised his Assistance, and that agreeable to Orders received from the *Hudson's Bay Company*.

At twelve that Night the Captains returned, having employed themselves in surveying the Creeks, and observing the Tides; and next Morning the Ships got under Way, in order to proceed nearer the Factory, and within the Land. In order to shew the Channel, (for the Direction of which two Beacons were erected, both now cut down by the *Governor's* Orders,) two People were sent, one with a Jack, another with a Pendant,

5<sup>th</sup>

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

127

to stand at the Spots where those Beacons had <sup>September.</sup> been. The Tide being down, we came to an Anchor short of the Place intended; grounded at low Water, in such a Manner as it was feared the Ship would receive a great Damage. Having again altered our Station, we had another Visit from some of the Factory; and Capt. *Smith* and Capt. *Moor* going up in the Boat, the *Governor* fired a Shot, which was observed by several to pitch in the Sand. The Factory People being asked, If they came on Business? They said, No, they only came to converse *Tete a Tete*; and as to the Shot no one ever knew what was meant, Capt. *Smith*, who was bent on Wintering above the Factory, as he could not winter at *Port Nelson*, not thinking it worth his Time to inquire. That Night the Ship was moved to the Birth intended for her in the Morning.

The next Day both the Captains set out again, staying out all that Night, which they spent in the Woods by a Fire, and at this Time concluded on a Place for Wintering. The People aboard the *California* were employed in the Interim in clearing a high Plot of Ground ashore, carrying Stores there, and erecting a Tent with Sails to keep such Stores from the Weather; built also a Sail-Tent for two Land-men to watch in, who also took it by Turns to go a Shooting, and from them we had a small Supply of Geese, Ducks, and Plover.

6.

On

September. On the Tenth the *California* being lightened, and in Part unrigged, went up a-breast of the Factory, saluting the Governor with seven Guns, which Salute was not answered until two Hours after ; expecting the *Dobbs* who touched in coming up, and did not get off that Tide. The Governor also made a Present in the Evening of ten fresh Geese, with a Sallad of Lettuce and Cresses ; both the Lettuce and Cresses very good of the Kind.

The Situation of the Factory is a clear Space made in the Woods, which surround it on three Sides, the Factory having an open Front to the Water, from which it stands a small Distance within the Bank ; to the North and Eastward covered with a good Battery, and to the South-East is a Dock for building or repairing either Sloops or Boats ; behind the Battery, and between that and the Dock, there is a Space of Land which they call the Plantation, and here the Indians who come to the Factory pitch their Tents ; and there is generally a Tent or two of old and infirm Indians, both Men and Women, who get their Maintenance from the Factory. This Part, which is on the Back of the Battery and Dock, and called the Plantation, is separated from the Factory by two Rows of high Palissades, between the first of which and the second, are Store-houses, the Cookery, and some Work-shops, low built, and so placed as they would be of little Service to an Enemy to cover an Attack of the Place. Within  
the

the inner Palissades are small Spots of Turnips, Collards, Sallads, and other Garden Stuff, belonging to the Governor and Officers. From the Plantation, or from the first Entering of the Palissades to the Factory, you walk on a wooden Platform. The Factory itself is a square Fort, having four Bastions, two Stories high, with a Platform on the Top leaded, and a Parapet, where they have some Cannon. The Factory is of Wood, built of large Logs of Trees, plained on three Sides, laid one on the other, and pegg'd together with large wooden Pins ; to the Front they put a plain Side of the Logs, and the Front is painted white. In the Center of each Curtain there projects in the second Story a close Lantern, a half Circle ; in which nor in any Part of the Bastions are there any Ports for Cannon, but Loops for small Arms. When you go into the Factory there is a handsome Area ; the Factory is much handsomer within than on the Outside.

In the upper Story of the South-East Bastion is the Governor's Apartment, to which there is a handsome Flight of wooden Steps out of the Area. His Apartment consists of four Rooms, with a Fire-Place in the largest ; the Rooms wainscotted, and neatly fitted up. Under the Governor's Apartment is the common Room for the Deputy-Governor and principal Handicrafts, as the Ship and House-Carpenter, and others, who compose the Governor's Mess ; in which is

S

a large

September. a large brick Stove erected for warming both this and the Governor's Apartment. Aside this Room are there several Cabins, in each of which there is a Bed-place, and besides Room for four or five People to sit commodiously, and every Cabin hath a Light into it. In the North-East Bastion, in the lower Part, is also a common Room, with a Stove of Brick for warming the Apartments; and in this Bastion are lodged the Steward and Cook, and all others (excepting the Surgeon) who are not of the Governor's Mess. The other two Bastions, and the Curtains, are divided into Store-houses, a Trading-room, a Magazine, &c.

The Building hath but a mean Appearance on the outside, but it is warm and convenient for the Purpose it is built for, and the Workmanship good of the Kind. From the Platform on the Top of the Factory you have a Prospect over the Woods a long Way, seeing Hills to the South-East, which are about twenty, or five-and-twenty Miles distant. Between which the Country is all low and flat; so is also the Island on which the Factory stands. These Hills are the Spots to form a right Judgment of the Climate of this Country; but what is perceived in that respect at the Factory, or within ten Miles round it, or where those who belonged to the Ships were obliged to winter, we may reasonably suppose bears no more Analogy with the Climate of the Island Country, or of those higher Lands we see from

from the Factory, than what is found at the Isle <sup>September.</sup> of *Sbepey*, or Hundreds of *Essex*, does with the Upland Country of *Essex* or *Kent*, or the major Part of *England* besides.

The Ship continuing off the Factory, the People were employed in getting ashore the dry Provisions, the Brandy, and what required a safer Custody, into a Store-house at the Factory, lent by the *Governor*. Also some were employed jointly with Capt. *Moor's* People in digging a Hole on the Plantation for to put some Beer in, to secure it during the Winter; on which they proceeded very slowly, having after the first three Feet, which was a kind of Loam, met with a frozen Part, that continued as low as they dug. It looked like a lead-coloured fleaky Stone, chipped and flew like it when broke by the Pick-axe; taken in the Hand was heavy, and cold as a Piece of Ice; but then it soon thawed or crumbled; the Particles of Sand of which it was composed quickly separating from each other.

The Wood which is on the three Sides of the Factory, and so of the Woods of the whole Island, is of Pine and Juniper, both but small, the Pine-Trees twenty to thirty Feet high, and about fifteen or twenty Inches round; the Juniper-Trees not above thirteen or fourteen Feet high; and the Trees grow at such a Distance from each other, as the Woods are no way thick. There is also Poplar and Alder, with Bushes and thick

Sep:ember. Brambles, and amongst the Bushes wild Currants, with white and red Gooseberry-bushes, which bear a Fruit. There is also long Grass and Moss, amongst which there grows a great Number of Dewwaterberries, and also Cranberries. The Woods are intermixed with open Plains; the Ground of both very marshy, and in many Places Bogs.

The *California*, it being then the Time of Spring Tides, went from the Factory *Saturday* 20th. *September* the twentieth, the *Dobbs* having gone some Days before, assisted by the People of the *California*; and at Noon of the twenty-third 23d. both Ships were in the Birth intended them for that Season, about two hundred Yards up a Narrow that is about four Miles from the Factory, and called *Ten Shilling* Creek, but not properly, it being a Branch of the great River from which it separates about thirty Miles above this Entrance where the Ships lay, and by which it rejoins the great River again. It is of the Width of about two Ships at the Entrance, which Width it continues not above a Mile up, then afterwards narrowing; hath Banks which are rather steep, and about fifty Feet in Height, thick covered with Brush, or Poplar, and Alder, from High-Water Mark to the Top; and on the Top of the Banks are Woods of Poplar, Pine, and Juniper, which even at the Time the Ships arrived there looked very agreeable and pleasant.

The

The Ships being secured, the building a House, *September.* and providing Fuel; was next undertaken, but the greatest Part of the Hands were employed in clearing the Spot the House was to be built on, the providing fitting Timber, carrying it thither, and the Sawing of Plank (being provided with Saws which were brought out of *England*) upon the thirtieth of *September* four Pieces of Timber were laid for the Foundation, and a brick Stove begun <sup>30th.</sup> with Mortar and Bricks with which we were supplied by the *Governor*, who also sent the Bricklayer of the Factory to build it; but there not being Materials to build two Stoves, the Captains were put under a Necessity to erect but one House, and live together.

The House was twenty Feet in Length, sixteen in Breadth, and in Height eighteen, consisting of two Stories, built of Logs of Wood laid one on the other, with two Sides plain or fayed, that they might be the closer; also between every two Logs Moss put, and the Moss of every Seam daubed on the Outside with a Loam or Kind of Clay, made up of Water and the Soil, which is almost all a Marle; which Loam by freezing becoming solid, prevents any Wind or Air from passing between such Logs. The Roof, which was shelving, was of Planks tightly caulked, as a Ship's Side. The upper Story had the two Captains Cabins in Front, and the Landing of the Stairs. These Cabins opened into a Passage which

September. which reached the Length of the House of more than three Feet in Width, with a Light at each End; and on the other Side of such Passage were a Row of Cabins for the Officers of both Ships, half to one, half to the other. The lower Story, in the Middle of which was the Stove, was also divided, one Side belonging to one Ship's Company, the other to the other. In this Story the Surgeon had his Cabin; the Mate, the Carpenter, the Cook, the Captains Servants, and others whom it was necessary to have, for sawing the Wood for the Stove, lighting the Stove, and other necessary Jobs, were also lodged here. And the Cabins were so conveniently contrived as fourteen of the *California's* People were entertained in the House, exclusive of the Captain. This Story had no Light, but what came in by the Doors (as the upper one had) was floored, and each Captain had a Cellar underneath the Floor.

The Stove was supplied, and lighted, one Week by one Ship's Company, the other Week by the other, so alternately; and was always in Capt. *Smith's* Week, lighted in the Morning, at Noon, and at Night. To fire these Stoves they artfully, within the Stove, in about a Foot of the Stove's Mouth, pile up, one on the other, Pieces of Wood about eighteen Inches in Length, three in Circumference, until the Stove is full to the Top; then place dry Pieces, of less Size, before that Wood, to which they put a Light, and the Draught

Draught  
the Y  
bring  
beat  
ing  
them  
Top  
(ther  
up to  
in the  
The  
being  
ed)  
to m  
cover  
lighte  
of C  
Quan  
of W  
panies  
place

At  
and to  
was,  
These  
teen  
and as  
ten o  
Pole  
the So  
Wood

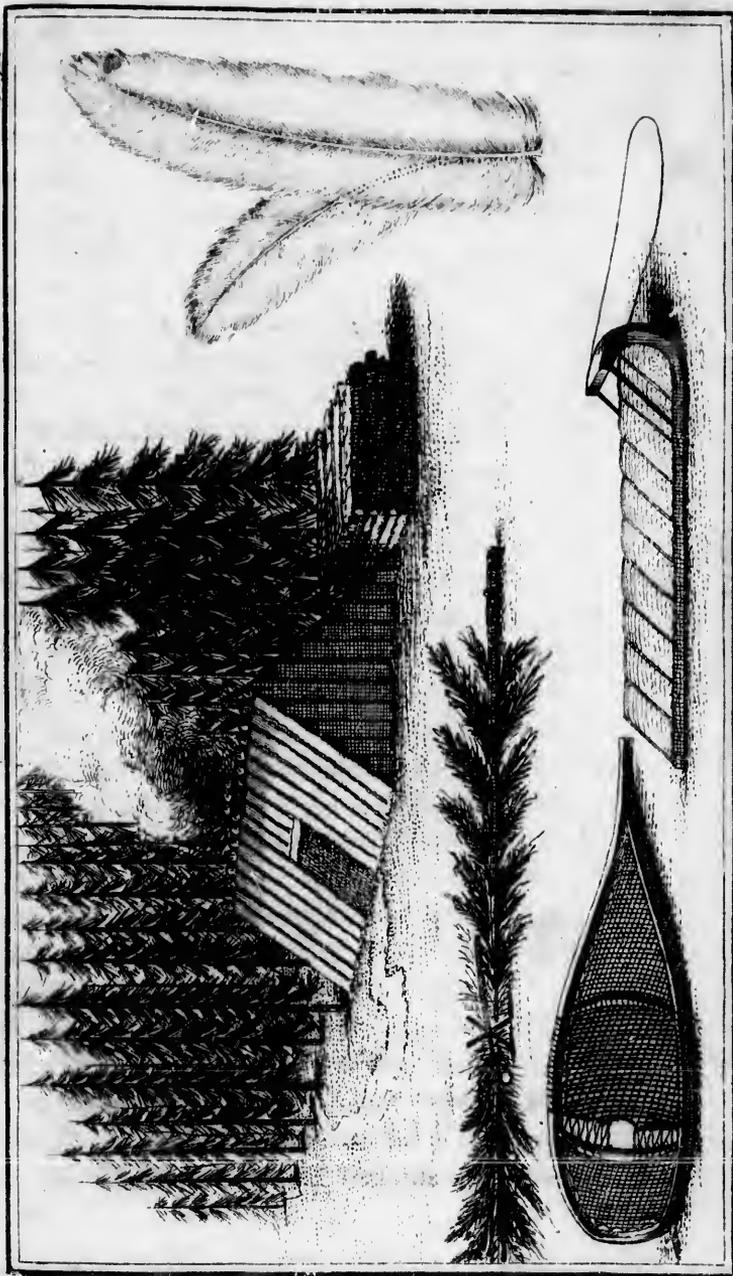
Draught of the Stove soon makes a Fire. When September. the Wood is burnt to a Coal, they, with a Rake, bring it forward to the Stove's Mouth; there beat the Coals small, and if there is any smoaking Piece, they pick such Bits out, and carry them away; and a Cover being then put on the Top of the Chimney, of the Outside the House (there being a Ladder always ready for the going up to do it) by such Means the Heat is confined in the House, and it will be warm some Hours. The Stove which was first erected (but afterwards; being ready to fall, taken down, and a less erected) warmed the House to that Degree as to melt the Candles, and not to admit the Lying covered a Bed; and with the other Stove, if duly lighted, those in the House could have no Sense of Cold. The Stove which consumed a vast Quantity of Fuel, was supplied from two Piles of Wood, that were procured by the Ships Companies, each Ship's Company one, and were placed at a small Distance from the House.

At some Distance from the Front of the House, and to the Right of it, was the Cookery, which was, as they term it in these Parts, a Log Tent. These Tents are built by putting a Pole, fourteen or sixteen Feet long, between two Trees; and as high as it is intended the Tent should be ten or twelve Feet; then leaning against this Pole on both Sides, leaving only three Feet on the South Side, for a Door Way, large Logs of Wood unbarked, their Tops meeting above the Pole;

September. Pole ; and those on one Side over-shooting the other. At Bottom these Logs are extended the Width they intend the Tent, the Shape of the Tent resembling the Eaves of a House ; and the Ends are also of the same Kind of Logs as the Sides ; the Parting between the Logs being filled with Moss, and daubed over with a Mixture of the Soil and Water. The Height of the Door is four Feet and a Half, and above that, from the Logs, to Right and Left, there is a Cross-Piece, and another near the Top, upon which Logs are laid, so to fill up the Vacancy which there is above, between the Logs, to Right and Left of the Door ; but the Cross-Pieces causing these Logs to lie hollow, so as not to touch the Ridge-Pole, and as many Logs on the opposite Side the Tent being also hollow, from the Ridge-Pole, by a Cross-Piece near the Top, these Logs do not meet, but leave an Opening, which answers the Purpose of a Chimney ; and is also the only Conveyance by which they have any Light. Under this Opening, within Side the Tent, they form the Hearth of Earth, about three Feet square, and one high, which they build round with Logs to prevent the Earth mouldering or falling away. At about four Feet from each End of the Tent they place across the Tent, Seat high, a large square Log ; and from these Logs there is another passés Endways on that Side the Tent, opposite to the Door. The Use of placing these Logs so, is for Seats round the Fire, and the End Logs also keep in the Bed-Cloaths ; for in  
that

ooting the  
tended the  
ape of the  
; and the  
ogs as the  
being filled  
Mixture of  
he Door is  
from the  
ross-Piece,  
n Logs are  
h there is  
nd Left of  
sing these  
the Ridge-  
ite Side the  
Ridge-Pole,  
e Logs do  
uch answers,  
so the only  
light. Un-  
they form  
et square,  
with Logs  
lling away.  
f the Tent  
gh, a large  
here is an-  
Tent, op-  
acing these  
e, and the  
ths; for in  
that

K. 116.





that S  
and th  
each h  
to the  
Beds  
a Qua  
and f  
the G  
two h  
hind

TI  
the o  
ing-M  
Upon  
other  
neys  
Stor

W  
Tent  
of th  
the h  
fame  
the c  
off,  
a M  
all in  
two  
mos  
whic  
near

that Space of Time, Wet, between those Logs <sup>September:</sup> and the Ends are the Beds put, two at each End, each Bed holding two, they lying with their Heads to the Sides of the Tent, and Feet inwards. The Beds are not laid on the Ground, but they gather a Quantity of small Pine-Tops, which is laid first, and so raise the Bed about a Foot or more from the Ground. The Log which runs between the two Logs and Sideways, marks out a Place behind it for their Chests, their Kettles, &c.

The Cookery was a Tent of this Kind, as to the outward Form and Hearth, but not the Lodging-Part, the Cooks being lodged in the House. Upon the Left-hand of the House were also two other Log-Tents; but they were without Chimneys; one belonging to each Ship; and were Store-houses.

While the House was carrying on, three other Tents were also built for wintering those People of the *California* who could not be entertained in the House. Capt. Moor built also Tents of the same Kind for his People. The Tents built for the *California* People were, one about six Miles off, as being a Sporting Country; another about a Mile; and a third about a Mile and half off; all in pleasant Situations, surrounded with Woods, two of them near to the *Ten Skilling* Creek; the most distant one near to a Creek in that Part which they called *French* Creek. Their Situation near a Creek is requisite, that Ice may be come

September. at in Winter ; and the Creek serves as a Road also for the more convenient Draught of Provisions in Winter. These Tents are placed in Woods, not only for Warmth-sake, but also on Account of getting Fuel ; and therefore choose such Parts in which there is most dry Wood for Firing (by which is meant such Wood as is upon the Decay, but not yet become rotten). They are also placed at a Distance from each other, both on the Account of Hunting, as if two Tents near to each other would interfere with each other's Game. They are also separated, that they may not steal each other's Firing, or cut down each other's Wood ; for there is a kind of Property which follows on the Erecting of every Tent ; no Man having a Right to cut a Stick within such a Distance of that Tent, as any one in that Tent can carry Home a Stick from on his Shoulder without resting. Three Men, with great Ease, will finish one of these Tents in a Couple of Days.

The House was situate in a Wood, about Half a Mile from where the Ships lay ; between which and the House, there was a turning Walk cut through the Wood. The House also look'd upon a Creek, aside of which it stood, on a rising Ground, at a small Distance from it. In the Creek is Plenty of Water, the Shores broad, and of gradual Ascent, covered with Poplar ; and upon the Banks spiring Pines, for more than a Mile in Length. The Plenty of Water was not natural to the  
Place,

Place, but owing to its being kept up by Dams, September. the Work of the Beavers; which Animals had also built a House on the Side of this Creek.

There were three Dams, two on one Side the Beaver-house, and another beyond on the other Side. The first of which was about a Mile off the Beaver-house, and reaches a-cross almost from one Bank-edge to the other, running high up the Shore; and is about fifty-seven Feet in Length. At each End the Dam begins much like to a Turf, or Clod of Earth turned up; from thence it is continued level, and in a straight Line, for about the Length of nine Feet, with an Increase in the Width, as it grows in Length; the Descent of the Shore being very gradual, the exterior Side of the Dam is not at this Length of nine Feet, exceeding six Inches in Height above the Surface, but the interior Side of the Dam, which is made with a sharp Sloap, is about a Foot and Half above the Surface, on that Side. And the Reason why the interior Side of the Dam is so much deeper than the Exterior, is, that all the Earth which is heaped up for the Dam is taken from the Inside. The Width of the Top of the Dam is here three Feet. The Dam then turns circular, forming a Figure, whose chord Line is twenty-seven Feet, and Radius nine Feet. And upon the Top of the Dam, in the Center of it, is a Cut, of about two Feet and a Half in Width, six Inches in Depth; by which the Water continually falls into a narrow Channel of no more

September: than three Feet in Width, that vents itself in *Ten Shilling* Creek; but the Water which supplies such Cut is within side, and close to the Dam twenty Feet broad; the perpendicular Height of the Dam on the exterior Side, nearest either End of the Cut (through which the Water falls) is two Feet and a half above the Surface, but as it is made with a Sloap, the Length of the Sloap is three Feet and a half, the interior Side is more than two Feet perpendicular, then with a Sloap, which on account of the Ice, I could not measure. Where the Form of the Dam is circular, the Top of the Dam is in that Part about three Feet and a half broad, with a Sloap inward.

There is no less Regularity observed in getting this Earth from the Inside, than in the rest of their Workmanship; at either End of the Dam, the Earth is taken up within a Foot of such End; as the Dam widens and heightens, they go further for the Earth, and where the Dam turned off, or at the End of nine Feet, they had gone five Feet to fetch the Earth, and, to form that Part of the Dam where the Cut was, they had gone four and twenty Feet to fetch the Earth, as nearly opposite to it as the Creek would let them; in taking up this Earth, they did not work level: At the Part next the Dam, they took most and deepest, and next to that less, and so lessened in the Depth in Proportion as they proceeded; that which they took up, at the extreme Parts from which they fetched it, was only thick Swade of Turf.

A. The  
B. The  
C. The  
D. The

A. The  
B. The  
C. The  
D. House  
E. Where

I. { Show  
Water

A. The  
B. Earth  
C. The

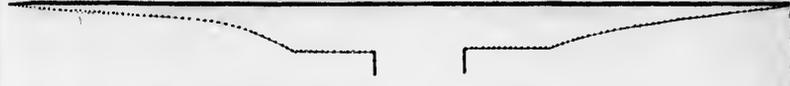
# The Profile View of a Dam



- A. The Ground
- B. The Front of the Dam
- C. The Top of the Dam
- D. The Inner part of the Dam

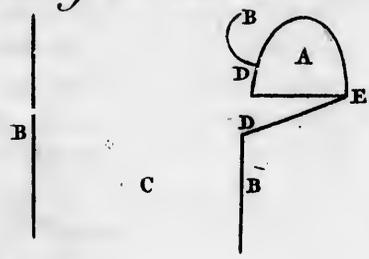
E { The Spot which the Earth is taken from to form the upper part of the Dam as D.B.

## The Third Beaver Dam

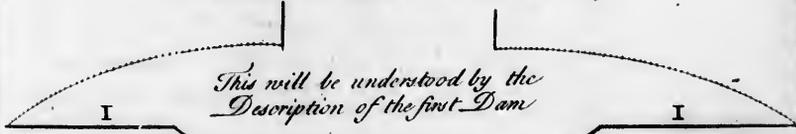


## The Situation of the Beaver House

- A. The Beaver House
- B. The Shoars of the Creek
- C. The Creek
- (The French of each side the House with the Earth of which the House is built.
- D. Where the House joins to the Bank.

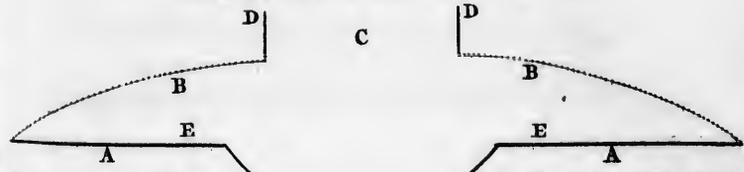


## The Second Beaver Dam



I { Shows how far the Water Spreads

## The First Beaver Dam



- A. The form of the Dam
- B. The dotted line expresses where the Earth was taken away that forms if Dam
- C. The Creek
- D. The Shoars of the Creek
- E. How far the water Spreads
- F. The Cut w<sup>th</sup> wants the water
- G. The Channel of water runs into

Tur  
circu  
up,  
By t  
Infid  
their  
behin

W  
whic  
Eart  
even  
down  
of th  
most  
lay  
Eart  
and f  
not t  
of th  
and f  
thick  
lique  
or So  
overt  
this  
the D  
ning

T  
is ma  
descr

Turf. The Space from which they so take it is <sup>September.</sup> circular, and, from the Manner of their taking it up, lies with a Declivity towards the Dam. By taking the Earth up after this Manner on the Inside, at the same Time they are building their Dam, they are at Work on their Reservoir behind it.

When they begin to make their Dam, to which, as already mentioned, they take up the Earth from the Inside the Dam, they do not even at the Beginning or Surface work directly down, but slopingly, which makes the Sloap of the interior Side of the Dam; and, taking the most Earth up close to the Inside of the Dam to lay on the Surface, the Part they take this Earth from becomes the lower Part of the Dam; and so the lower Part of the Dam is solid Earth, not to be hurt by any Flood, and the upper Part of the Dam which is the Soil, mixed with Stones, and small Sticks of Poplar, about three Fingers thick, the Sticks laid flat, and others stick obliquely, and all covered on the Outside with Turf, or Sod, upon which there grows Grass, can be only overturned or damaged by the Flood; and, if this happens, there will yet be the lower Part of the Dam that will prevent the Water from running intirely out.

The second Dam, or that nearer the House, is made after the same Manner of the first just described, but is of greater Width, being eighty-four

September's four Feet. The most observable Difference is the Variety of their Shape, this approaching nearer to a straight Line, than the first Dam, and therefore the Water spreads more behind this second Dam, than behind the first; but the first, being more circular, collects the Water more to a Head, and by the Cut, as was observable, there was a freer Pass for the Water, than by the Cut of the second, tho' that was more open, being damaged, and in some Part broken down; so that the second Dam cannot overflow the first, as the first draws the Water from the second, in more or less Proportion as the first can vent it;

The Beaver House is about a quarter of a Mile beyond the second Dam, so situated as to be surrounded about three Parts with Water, the other Part joined to the Land; it is round with an oval Dome at the Top; the Height above the Surface of the Water is eight Feet, about forty Feet in Diameter, and in Circumference about an hundred and twenty; and this Proportion here between a Diameter and a Circle, how particular soever it may seem, was found to be Fact, after repeated Measurings made on the Ice before the Snow was of any Thickness. The Part which adjoins to the Bank is not made out of the Bank, but of the same Materials as the rest; the Bottom Part of the House is Earth or Soil, with Pieces of Wood laid in it, of about three Inches Circumference; then a Parcel of Poplar Sticks which are laid with one End in the House, and

and the other slanting a long Way under Water, <sup>September,</sup> then a Layer of Earth, or Soil again; then Poplar Sticks and these Layers of Earth, and the Poplar Sticks do not exceed eighteen Inches in Height; and, quite from them to the Summit of the House, there are Soil Stones and small Sticks all artfully put together as in the upper Part of the Dams, and the whole covered with Sods, long Grass growing thereon, and on the upper Part Willows. The largest Wood I saw used about the House was two Pieces of Poplar, which was near the Top, with their largest End out; the one three Inches, the other two Inches Diameter; what their Length was I could not judge, by reason they were within the House. All the rest was small Stuff, not above two or three Fingers thick. The House is built that the outermost Part of it doth not stand further out into the Creek than the Edge of the Shore, but what brings the Water so much round it (except the Creek in Front) is that the House, being built of the Earth or Soil close to where it stands, the taking that Soil hath made two Trenches, one on each Side, which are in the broadest Part nine Feet, narrowing as they approach the Bank, and eighteen Feet long, receiving the Water of the Creek; having seemingly a Depth of Water at their Entrance, but shallowing towards the Bank. The Creek, at the Front of the House, is six and thirty Feet broad, seemingly deep, and continues deep, though narrower, to the Dam, and  
between

September. between the second Dam and the first, the Water is much shallower, tho' deeper in some Parts than others; and the Creek again narrower, but in no Part less than from fourteen to eighteen Feet broad, mostly above twenty; the House is tight and hard put together, requiring an Ax to break into it, and, when the Frost is set in, almost impenetrable.

From the House there were several Paths into the Wood, the Track of which much resembles that of a common Foot-path, the Use of which Path is to draw down out of the Wood the Sticks or Trees which they have there got, either for Food or Building; and they bite off all the Twigs, or Pieces of Willow and Poplar which grew a-cross, or in the Way, to make a free Passage.

The third and last Dam is about three hundred Yards beyond the House, but the Creek is lost in a Swamp within about fifty Yards of the House, so that the Water of this Creek is no more than the Draining of these Swamps, and of the Land near to it, penned up by the Dams beyond the House; before you come at the Swamp, the Land on each Side the Creek falls low; there is no more Pine-Wood, only Poplar-Brush; and the Land here descends towards the great River, which is about half a Mile off; beyond the Swamp a Parcel of Water, then a Swamp again for some Length, beyond that a narrow

narrow  
much  
the L  
great  
runs  
Wat  
runni  
to sup  
Side  
tween  
the V  
down  
Hou

T  
from  
in a c  
the g  
Hou  
Sloop  
whic  
is th  
Eart  
Infid  
further  
twelv  
it is  
of th  
Dam  
left v  
falls  
and

narrow Channel for upwards of an hundred Yards, <sup>September:</sup> much like a common Ditch, but deep, which, as the Land declines, would empty itself into the great River, but it is the third Dam which runs athwart here that causes this Collection of Water, and, is a Prevention of the Water running off, altering its Course and confining it to supply the Vent of the Dams on the other Side the House, and the Pieces of Swamp between this Channel and the Creek-head, keep the Water as it drains through them, from going down faster, than the Dams which are below the House demand it.

This third and last Dam much different from the other, is made on even Ground; it is in a direct Line for twelve Feet; on that Part next the great River, or on the Outside; from the House the perpendicular Height is two Feet, Sloap three Feet, four Feet broad on the Top, which slants towards the great River; the Inside is three Feet perpendicular, Sloap five Feet; the Earth from which it is made is fetched from the Inside, as is done at the other Dams, but the further Parts from which it is fetched, not above twelve Feet distant; and at the Place from which it is fetched there is deep Water; to the right of this Part of the Dam twelve Feet long, the Dam is continued about ten Yards, and to the left which is a lower Part thirty; but the Dam falls soon to a Foot and a half, a Foot in Height, and so less, and then no better than a Plough-  
U  
Ridge:

September. Ridge: This Dam hath no Cut on the Top of it, as the others, to let the Water off.

This House was said to have no Beavers in it, by Reason they had been disturbed; for, when once Beavers are disturbed, they immediately quit that Habitation. The *Indians* know in the Summer Season, whether the Beavers inhabit a House or not, by looking on the Stems of the Poplar, the upper Part, or Branches of which have been bit off, and seeing whether the Marks of their Teeth are fresh or not; for it is with their fore Teeth, which are shaped like those of a Rabbit, that they cut down all their Wood, and the Pieces, where cut, look as if they had been cut by a Cooper's Gouge: If the Marks are fresh, they then know that the House is not forsaken. The *Indians* also know by the Mark which their Teeth leave, what kind of Beavers there are in such House, their Age and Number; at a Birth they have from two to five, and not more, and breed Annually.

The *Indians* sometimes shoot them, which they do by getting to the Leeward of the Beavers; and they must make Use of some Dexterity, for the Beaver is an extreme shy Animal, sharp at Hearing, and of a quick Scent; and the Opportunities they have of shooting them is at such Times as the Beavers are at Work, or when Ashore to feed on the Poplar. They work in the Morning and Evening, when every Thing is quiet; while  
at

at Work they will stop all of a Sudden, and listen if they can hear any Thing, and if they do, jump into the Water immediately, continue in the Water a Time, and then rise at a large Distance from where they are at first seen. They are sometimes taken by Traps, which is a very simple Contrivance; the Bait is Poplar-Sticks, laid in a Path, and near to the Water; which, if the Beaver begin to feed on, then a large Log of Wood falls on their Necks. At the setting of these Traps, the *Indians* first wash their Hands, and use all possible Means that the Poplar, with which they set these Traps, shall not smell of their Hands, for then the Beaver would not come near it. This is the Way of getting them most used, it being easier than that of shooting them; the Gun being apt to tear the Skin, and make it the less valuable.

The Beaver comes not upon the Land in the Winter, but then they attack him in his House, and his Skin is reckoned in the highest Perfection about *Christmas*. To take the Beaver in Winter, they break the Ice at a Distance from the House in two Places, the one behind the other, and in both Places from the Shore (the House standing usually two Thirds in Water,) on one Side the House, to the Shore on the other Side of it; that is, before the Front of the House, from Shore to Shore: Then they take away the broken Ice with a Kind of a Racket, for otherwise that loose Ice would hinder them from seeing where to place

U 2

their

September. their Stakes, which they do at both Places where they have so broke the Ice, as also a Net at each Place. The Nets are of a large Mash, and sometimes eight or ten Fathom in Length, either made of Twine, bought at the Factories, or of Deer-Skin, cut into Thongs; and with these Stakes and Nets the House is inclosed, and the Beaver cannot escape by Water. When the Nets and Stakes are fixed, they then go to breaking up the House, and when broke up, turn in their Dog; the Beaver frightened, immediately quits the House, the Entrance to which is always by a Hole from the Water, never by the Land-way. The Beaver taking the Water, is deceived by the Mashs of the Net, and is soon intangled in it; and as soon as intangled, give Notice by ringing a Bell, which is affixed at the Top of the Net. The *Indians*, who are not Masters of a Bell, watch if the Water rises, and if it does, they immediately up with the Net. If they have succeeded, they are as expeditious as possible in getting out the Beaver, and in putting down the Net again. Sometimes the Beaver will return, when they find they cannot get further than the Net, to the House, and there be taken, and knocked on the Head; first making a great Moan, which according to common Report, and of those who have told me they have seen it (but how far to be credited I will not say) was much like the Moan of a Human, sitting on their hinder Parts, rubbing their fore Paws together, and Tears running from their Eyes.

When

When they take a House of them, they generally leave two to breed. The Beaver is a valuable Booty to the *Indian*, both as it is excellent Food, and also as it affords him the best of his Cloathing; and as it is a Commodity for him besides to trade with. The *Indians* make Use of the Teeth of Beavers to sharpen their Knives, or any other iron Tools.

Besides this Beaver-House mentioned, there is another, larger, which is built in a hollow Way, through which there is a small Cut or Channel of Water; at the Foot of this Cut stands the House, but the Foundation of this is on much higher Ground than that of the other House, though this House is of the same Shape with the other. Below the House there is a broad Place, out of which they seem to have taken the Earth, of which they made a Dam, six Feet perpendicular in Height, in Form much after those mentioned; but it being in the Midst of Winter when I first heard of this House, and the Snow then on the Ground, I could not take the Dimensions. The Spot from which they took the Earth seemed to form a large Pond, and as if the Water at some Times rose very high in it; and which I take to be the Reason of the House being built on so high a Foundation. Between this Dam and the River was half a Mile, and in that Space there were two more Dams, but both of them as large as the first. The Materials of these Dams were the same as those of

*Beaver*

When

September. *Beaver* Creek, of Stones, Poplar-Sticks, and Earth, mixed together, and plaistered or covered with a Kind of Marle, as I perceived by one of them, after clearing away the Snow. There was a Dam also cross the narrow Cut above the House, but in Ruins ; for this House, as well as that at *Beaver* Creek, was uninhabited.

As to the Inside of these Houses, I cannot say any Thing as to my own Knowledge, by Reason I had no Opportunity of seeing them, or getting them broke into. By the best Information I could get from those who have seen the Inside of *Beaver*-Houses, I find that the common received Opinion of their building several Stories in them, one above the other, is quite fictitious ; they report that the Floor is high, so as when you are in, it much resembles an Oven ; that the *Beavers* have one Spot near the Water's Edge, where they lie upon dry Grass, ready to dive into the Water on hearing a Noise. In another Part there is the Poplar (which they provide in the Summer against the Winter) the greater Length of which lies out of the House in the Water, which they pull in as they want it. In another Part is their Dung, or Soil, which they are under a Necessity of laying there ; for if they voided it in the Water, and especially in frosty Weather, their Entrance would soon be choaked up.

What the *Beaver* feeds on is only the Bark and Rhind of the Poplar, not the Wood ; they also feed

on a Weed which grows at the Bottom of the *September*.  
Water. They are in themselves far from despicable Meat; as to its Appearance, it is like Mutton, but, as to the Taste, it hath a great Resemblance of Pork. It is a strong Meat, and very satiating. The most delicate Part is the Tail; the Meat of it is much different from that of the Body, being a Lump of hard Fat and Sinews.

The Beavers are remarkably affectionate the one to the other. Two of them were caught when about six Weeks old, and brought alive to one of the *Hudson's Bay* Factories, where they were preserved by Pieces of Poplar put in Water, and a Place made for them to lodge in; they throve for near two Months, when one Night one of them, by a Fall from the Parapet at the Top of the Factory, was killed; the other was perceived the next Day to moan, to eat nothing, and so he continued to do for four Days, and then died.

We have mentioned the Number of white Whales seen off the Entrance of *Hays's River*, which were then thought to be a Sign that the Winter was not so near as expected; and, until the second of *September*, we had clear, warm, beautiful Weather, two Days together, like to which we had not seen since leaving the *Orkneys*, such Weather as is unusual at this Time of the Year in these Parts. The Factory-People told us, it was the only warm and pleasant Weather  
that

*September.* that they had enjoyed this Year, having had, in the Summer Quarter. very indifferent Weather, and, before that, a late and bad Spring. They also judged, though the Geese came in Plenty from the Northward, or North-Westward, that we should not have Winter yet, though this was the usual Time in most Years for the Winter's setting in; and their Reason was, because the young Geese could but just fly, and were very thin.

On the second of *September* we had an Alteration of the Weather, the calm and moderate changing to windy Weather, and the warm Weather changing to Chill, and, in a few Days, to Cold, with Frost on some Nights, hard Gales of Wind, and cloudy Weather, with Rain, which was the Kind of Weather that lasted to the twelfth. The thirteenth and fourteenth of *September* were windy, with Falls of Sleet; and on these two Days saw many Geese; the Shore of *Hays's* River, South-East from the Factory, appearing white with their Numbers; which, on, the fifteenth, it being cloudy Weather, with a fresh Wind Westerly, flew very high, and took away to the Southward, accompanied with a great Number of Ducks and Plover.

The sixteenth we had our first Snow; the seventeenth Wind, with Rain and Sleet; the eighteenth Snow again, and, on the nineteenth, the Frost was so advanced, that wet Linnen, hung out, immediately froze; but, on the twentieth, it was open

open sunshiny Weather, and less cold. On the <sup>September.</sup> twenty-first there was a thick wetting Fog all Day; the twenty-second thick and hazy; the twenty-third a dark dull Day; the twenty-fourth thick Weather, with Mist in the Morning, the rest of the Day dark and dull, with some Rain at Noon, very cold. On the twenty-fifth there was a hard Frost, a clear Day, with Sun-shine; in the Afternoon the Weather no Way cold, nor any Frost at Night; and such Weather continued to the twenty-ninth. So, from the second to the twenty-ninth, we had Weather much resembling the Winter Weather in *England*, not only in being as cold some Days as it is at any Time in Winter in *England*, but in the Weather being equally inconstant and variable with what it is there.

On the twenty-ninth the Wind, which had been for some Days moderate, freshened, and blowed hard; a great Noise of Geese in the Morning, before Day-Light and after, and several Flights of seventy or eighty pass. The Sun, which shone out pleasantly in the Morning, was soon veiled with a thick Haze, and there continued falling all Day a small Rain, making it raw and unpleasant: Towards Night it grew very cold; it snowed all Night, and froze very hard; the same on the next day; and the Frost now set in to be continual.

October.

The Weather, now grown to be very cold, began to be more settled. Between the first and the thirteenth of *October* there were, at Times, Falls of Snow, otherwise fine clear Weather, with Sunshine ; but, on the thirteenth, there was Rain, with which it grew much warmer ; but, on the next Morning, the fourteenth, the Wind then changing from the South to North-West, it grew again very cold, and the Frost very sharp.

The Ships Boats had a free Passage backward and forward to the Factory, no longer than the fifth of *October*. Upon the third, as it had done Days before, the Tide brought a great Quantity of thin skim Ice into the Creek, Part of which it left on the Banks ; so on the fourth ; and the fifth the Entrance of the Creek was so full of Ice upon the Flood, that the Long-Boat of the *California*, and the Pinnace, with great Difficulty pushed through, nor could they for some Time get to the Shore, the People being first taken out in the Small-Boat, very cold, and some of their Jackets almost covered with Ice, the Spray of the Water being froze on them. Upon the seventh there was a Quantity of Ice on the Shores of the great River, and the Channels upon the Flood were filled with flush Ice. By the ninth the Creek was froze over from Side to Side, and could be walked upon, the Shoals as well as the Shores of the great River, as far down as the Factory, had now Ice upon them, the Ice extending

tending itself someway into the Channels ; but <sup>October.</sup>  
the Channels were yet open.

After the thirteenth of *October* we neither heard nor saw any more Geese during the Winter, tho' it is usual for some few of them to stay as long as there are any Waters open, the Want of which is a sufficient Reason for their not continuing in these Parts ; to which may be added another, which is, their not being sufficiently provided with Feathers to preserve them against the Severity of the Season ; for all the Birds which remain in these Parts are extraordinarily provided by Nature for that Purpose, except the Raven. Amongst these Birds, none are a more remarkable Instance of this than the Partridge, which, in Summer, are brown, much the Colour of an *English* Partridge. Those brown Feathers they moult as the Winter comes on, and have, in their Stead, white Feathers, excepting the larger Tail-Feathers, which are tipped with black. The white Feathers (excepting the Pinion Feathers, and the large Feathers of the Tail) are double, or lined, every Quill producing two or double Feathers, one growing within the other ; the inner one less than the outer, and more soft and downy. Thus in Winter they have double the Number of small Feathers to what they have in Summer. They moult these white Feathers in Spring, and re-assume their brown Feathers (which then are only one to a Quill) against the Summer Season.

October.

The Partridge is not unlike to those in *England*, as to the Shape of the Head, but their Beaks are rather more snubbed and short. Over their Eyes they have small red Combs; in the Make of their Body like a Pidgeon, but much larger; their Legs are muffled; they feed when the Snow is on the Ground, on the small Twigs and Buds of Poplar, of which you will find their Craws full, having Gravel amongst it. They run much as *English* Partridge do, and, like them, flock together, but this only during the Winter Season; and it is their Similitude to the *English* Partridge, in these two respects, that gave them their Name. Most of the Partridge were this Year intirely white by the thirteenth of *October*; there were few or none of them which had not moulted their brown Feathers by that Time.

As the Birds are provided for against the Severity of the Season, so are the Beast; which is evidenced in the Skins of those Beasts, which are killed in Winter being only of Value, and what we call Firs; the Skin of those Beasts which are killed in Summer being of little Value, and never traded for. The Rabbits are provided by Nature with a warmer Coat than what they have in Summer, having in Summer only a short shag Fir, of a brownish Colour, which they do not shed; but on the Approach of Winter it shoots out into a long Hair, turning white. When the Rabbits are intirely changed, so as on locking amongst the Hair you do not see it brown

at

at the Root, or half Way up, they are then in high Season for Eating. In their Skins they appear much larger than our *English* Rabbits, but, when skinned are not so; they have the Resemblance both of the Rabbit and Hare; their Head and their Ears are like to the Rabbit; in their Body and Feet they most resemble the Hare.

Upon the Fifteenth we had a Fall of small dusty Snow, from Six to Eleven, with a sharp Air; which was the first Snow that continued or laid on the Ground, and did not melt as all the former Snows had done. The People were now forced to wear Mittins; for, if their Hands were bare, the Frost would immediately seize them. They also found it necessary to wear more Cloathing. All Iron touched stuck to the Fingers. Water exposed in the open Air immediately froze; and Beer carried in a Cask, between the House and the Ship (though not Half a Mile) would have a Quantity of Ice amongst it. On the Eighteenth, at Night, was the last Rain we had during the Winter.

Between the fifteenth and thirtieth of *October*, it was much the same, as to Cold; sometimes warmer than the other, as the Wind was Northerly or Southerly; the Northerly, and especially North-Westerly Winds producing the coldest Weather; frequent Falls of small dusty Snow; but at other Times clear Weather.

Several

October. Several of the Seamen were about this Time taken ill ; some while at Work in the Woods ; others aboard the Ship, upon their Return from Work. When they came near to the Fire they were seized with a Shivering, and Sicknefs at the Stomach, like the Attack of an Ague Fit, and were very faint. The Night after, they would be restless ; on the next Day complained either of Pains in their Heads or Backs, but never, at the same Time, of both. They were very low-spirited ; on the succeeding Night would sleep better than on the former ; their Pain was less on the next Day, and Spirits better, but with very little Appetite. The third Night they would rest tolerably ; and on the following Day would be in a manner well, and free from Pain. On the fourth or fifth Day would be able to return to their Business. All the Remedies made use of, were, either bleeding the Day the Person was taken, or, on the next Day ; and something given to Sweat ; but I could never hear that this manner of treating the Distemper had any sensible Effect.

Novemb. *November* the first being cloudy, with small Snow, and a fresh Wind at N. E. the Cold increased ; and the next Day, the Wind at N. W. began to be extreme, or very intense ; and the Captain, with the Officers and Seamen, being still on board the Ship, could not be warm, not even in the Cabbin, though a great Fire was continually

tinually kept, and Blankets nailed over the Windows. If any Water poured out of one Vessel into another, fell aside, it immediately froze. Brandy was congealed so as to look like Oil. Port Wine froze solid. Liquor, one third Brandy, froze solid. Excepting what contained in a small Cavity, in the Middle, both of the Wine and the Bombo, what remained unfroze in such Cavities was extremely strong. All within Side the Ship, the Ceilings, and the Bolt-heads, excepting in the Cabbin or the Galley, were thick covered with a white Rind. Upon Waking in the Morning the Blankets would have Icicles upon them near to the Mouth, proceeding from the Freezing of the Breath. When we went Abroad, the Eye-lashes, the Dropping of the Nose, and the Sweat aside the Wigs, froze. In Cutting of the Ice with an Axe, to get at the Water, the Bits of Ice which would fly up, or the Sprinkling of the Water, would immediately freeze, and stick to the Face or Cloaths. The Fingers could not be exposed a Trifle of Time, without Freezing; and you were constantly obliged, every Quarter of an Hour, or oftener, to rub your Face, to prevent the Nose or the Cheeks Freezing. So that we were now advanced to as severe Weather, with Respect to Cold, as the Winter would admit of; and which lasted until the Tenth, but then grew more moderate. The Commanders, and the People, were by that Time removed from the Ships to the House, and the Tents.

It

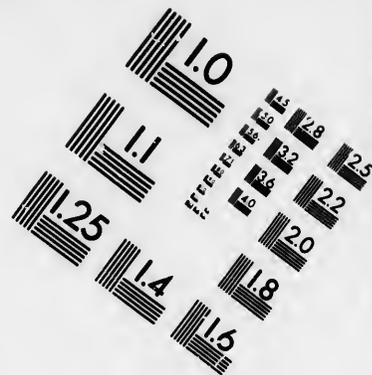
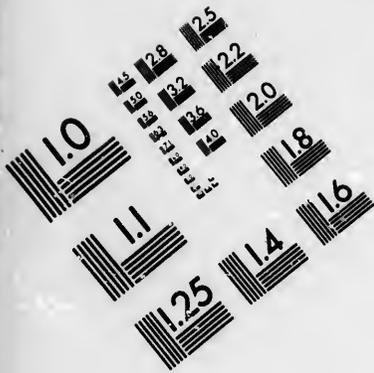
Novemb. It held moderate until the Twentieth, and, as was usual in the more moderate Weather, close; but less Snow fell now than before; and from the Twentieth to the Thirtieth, which was mostly sharp Weather, clear, with Sun-shine, there were but two Falls of Snow for those ten Days, and little Wind during the whole Month.

For several Days, at the latter End of the Month, a Rhime fell like small Needles of Snow, which would shew themselves glistering in the Sun; never stuck to the Cloaths to wet them, and were not to be seen of a cloudy Day. The Change, from intense to more moderate Weather, is usually the Effect of the Winds. The Southern Winds abate the intense Cold; but at the same Time change the serene Sky (the usual Consequence of North and North-West Winds) to close and cloudy, with an Alteration, with respect to the Frost, so as to make it more or less; but not so far as to cause the least Thaw. The Earth is every-where dry and hard; the Waters covered with Ice, the Snow sleety as Dust, hangs in Clods on the Trees; and also covers both Earth and Ice.

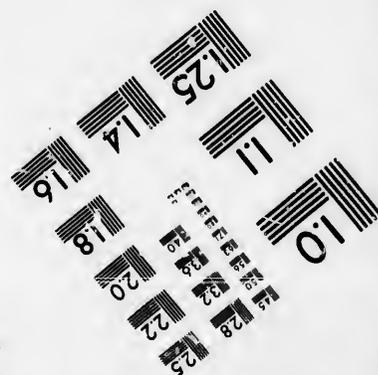
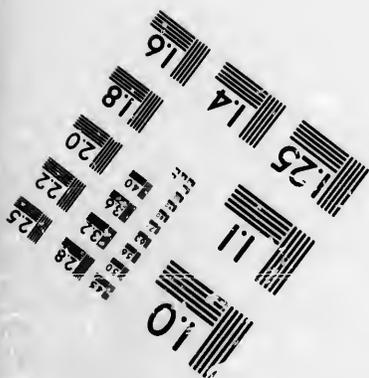
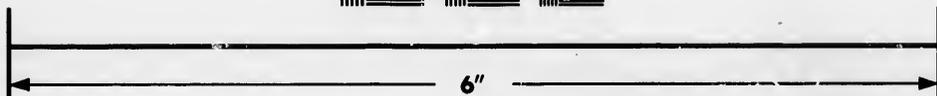
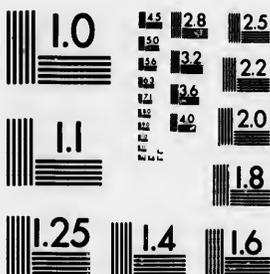
Between the thirteenth and nineteenth of *October* a great Quantity of Water came into the River; and the Ice in the Creek, the Nineteenth, was very much broke up. A Boat came from the Factory; and Capt. *Moor* sent his Jolliboat, though

though with some Hazard, down to the Factory ; Novemb.  
 which returned upon the Twentieth. Upon the  
 Twenty-ninth the River was supposed to be pas-  
 sable, being fixed Ice from Side to Side, even  
 below the Factory ; but on Trials made in the  
 Channel, the Ice was yet tender. On the fifth  
 of *November* was passed over ; but at the same  
 Time was open a Mile and a Half below the  
 Factory, the Width of the Channel, with Ice on  
 the Shores and the Flats ; but on the fourth of  
*December* it was fast from Side to Side, as low  
 as the North Point of the Island, from the Shore  
 of the Main to the Shore of the Island. It was  
 froze but a League farther into the Bay all Win-  
 ter, between the Shoals that are to Northward  
 of the Island, and the East Shore. And this  
 Difference of the Time, as to the Freezing over,  
 above, and below the Factory, and more towards  
 the Sea, is not to be attributed to the Weather  
 being severer at the Time it is froze over, than  
 it was before, when the Parts above the Factory  
 were froze ; and it is attributable to no other Cause  
 than to the Rapidity of the Tides being much  
 greater below the Factory, and towards the Bay,  
 than what they are above the Factory. The first  
 Ice which is generated, is generated up the River  
 where the Tides are less. When the Tides are  
 on the Rise they lift the Ice ; so the Ice, being  
 loosened, comes down with the Ebb. The next  
 Flood takes it back again ; but not so far as to  
 the Place where it was broken from ; and there  
 casts it on the Shores of the River and the Creeks,





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

1.5  
1.6  
1.8  
2.0  
2.2  
2.5  
2.8  
3.2  
3.6  
4.0

5.0  
5.6  
6.3  
7.1  
8.0  
9.0  
10.0

Novemb. and on the Shoals where it incorporates. By these Means the first Ice comes into the lower Part of the River, laying the Foundation for the River, being froze over.

The intense cold Weather did not come on this Year sooner than common. The Beginning of *November* is usually the Time that the Factory People have their Winter-Cloathing delivered them; which consist of Coats of Beaver-skins sewed together, shaped much like a Great-Coat, but no Seams at the Sides or Back. These Coats they gather up round with a Belt, and with Thongs tie them close over the Breast. They have large Mittins of Beaver-skins, that hang before them by a String, which goes round their Shoulders, that they may have their Hands at Liberty, to take in or out, as any Occasion may require; *viz.* To charge and fire their Guns, or set their Traps. They have Caps, the Crown of which is of Cloth, the Flaps of which reach down to the Shoulders, and button close under the Chin, are of Bever-skin; and those who do not use Caps, have Martin or Cat-skin Wigs. Some, in most excessive Weather, will wear Pieces of Beaver-skin over the Face, as high as to the Eyes. On their Legs and Feet, have three Pair of Woollen Socks; one just comes to the Instep, the other to the Ankle, and the third, two Flaps of the Sock, almost all the Way up the Leg. Over these Socks they wear a Shoe made of Mouse or Deer-skin, of the *Indians* dressing,

dressing, soft and pliable, much like to Wash-Novemb.  
Leather (for if the Feet are any Way confined  
they immediately freeze); these Shoes are with-  
out Heels. They have a Stocking of Woollen  
Cloth, which reaches to their Shoe; and, by  
Strings on each Side, they tie the Stocking to the  
Shoe, so as nothing can get in between. The  
Stocking is made like a Spatterdash, only hangs  
loose about the Ancles, not fitting close as a  
Spatterdash does; for, being loose, the Snow  
shakes off the easier; and if close, the Snow ly-  
ing there must freeze the Leg. The Stockings  
are not buttoned as a Spatterdash, but sewed up  
on the Side; and beyond the Seam there is left  
a Flap all the Way down, which protects the  
Seam from the Snow. The Stockings reach up  
to the Crutch; but are gartered under the Knee,  
generally with Garters which are made by the  
*Indians*, of Porcupine Quills, coloured, and hav-  
ing Strips of Leather at the End. Every Factory  
Man hath his Gun; a Pouch on one Side, a  
Powder-horn on the other. To their Belt, with  
which they tie up their Coats, they have a Bag  
hanging behind them, which they call a *Skipper  
Toakin*, containing a wooden Tinder-Box, a Flint,  
and a Steel. This Bag is sometimes made of  
Cloth, at other Times of Leather, some orna-  
mented, by the *Indians*, with Brass-work (the  
Brass, the Remains of their old Kettles) and  
others with Beads. It is usual also to carry a  
small Hatchet at their Belt, that in case of los-  
ing their Way they can cut down Wood, and

Novemb. build a Barricado, or a thick Hedge of Pine, to cover them from the Wind; and with a good Fire before them, as there is no Thaw or Moisture, there is not any thing to be feared as to Catching of Cold, nor as to Freezing, from the intense Cold that the Fire protects them from. By these Means can stay all Night without Harm, and comfortably, if they have any Game in their Bag, which hangs upon their Shoulders by a Strap of Leather, that comes before them across their Breasts, and is usually called their Partridge Bag. Besides, if any Person finds any Part of him freezing, it is customary, immediately, if not near a Tent, to make a Fire, and set himself down, with that Part which is so freezing from the Fire, and use strong Friction. So you do in case you find your Cheeks, Nose, or any Part of your Face, tingling, you immediately turn with your Backs to the Wind, rub the Part stoutly, and the Freezing may be prevented. The Hatchets are also useful to them for Repairing their Traps, and on several Occasions.

From the Use of so warm a Dress, it may be easily imagined, that the Weather is very severe, yet it is not so severe that there is no Subsisting without such a Dress; some of the Factory Servants themselves only wear Coats made of Leather, or Mouse-Skin, dressed by the *Indians*, which are loose and long, something like a Banyan. Blankets, and even a good great Coat, will do as to the Body; the principal Care required being

being as to the extreme Parts, as to the Feet and Novemb. Legs, Arms and Hands, these must be secured, as also the Head, and these Parts the *Indians* take principal Care of, both as to themselves and their Children.

This Method of providing by the Factory People was a Pattern for the Ship's People to do the same; some of the Officers had provided themselves with Beaver Coats, which are called *Tockies*. Before they set out from the *Orknyes* the *Governor* of *York Fort*, sent each Ship a Number of *Tockies* for the Winter, both for the Use of the common Men, as well as of the Officers of both Ships, who were not supplied; and presented all the Officers with Beaver-Skin Mittens, and Skins for Caps; he also supplied both Ship's Companies with Leather for Shoes. They were supplied with Socks and Stockings out of the Ship's Stores.

Many of the Men by a former Acquaintance, or one newly contracted, with the Servants of the Factory, got Beaver Mittens and Caps; others Leather Mittens which they lined with Woollen; or made them Woollen Mittens, wearing also on their Hands two pair of knit Mittens. They provided themselves so well, that no material Accident as to Freezing happened to any one; the most Material was a Finger of one of the Seamen was froze, and the Heel of another, both which were cured; but as to the others, they

Novemb. they only got the Tip of their Fingers blistered, or their Cheeks, or their Nose, which presently disappeared, leaving the Part very tender.

What was the greatest Inconvenience, was the Want of Snow-Shoes, which they had but a few Pair of, and without which it was almost impossible for them to go out and kill Game upon the Creeks which were level, and where the Snow fell direct; the Snow was at no Time above a Foot thick, but on the Plains where there is high Grass, and Brush, the Snow lying light and hollow, upon every Step taken, you sink to the Knees. Upon the Sides of Banks and in Places where the Snow is drifted by the Wind, the Snow shall be six or eight, in some Places, fourteen Feet in Depth; and to the Windward it shall be so hard, that a Person may walk up it without making any Impression, and as soon as he is at the Top, it will give Way and let him in, finding some Difficulty to extricate himself afterwards.

The Form of the Snow-Shoes is somewhat Elliptical, not being a perfect Ellipsis; the one End round, and the other terminating in a Point. There are some of these Shoes six Feet long, or longer; the usual Size of those used in the Parts where we were, and of those the People had, was about four Feet long, in the broadest Part about seventeen Inches; the Outside is of the Juniper Tree, about the Thickness of an Inch, and half  
an

an In  
a Ra  
sing  
Nett  
work  
(only  
To k  
the S  
are t  
Junip  
three  
larges  
a drie  
Shoe;  
is nex  
and is  
Gut;  
that, a  
rest of  
of drie  
the Bar  
that w  
is Net-  
Sinew  
Mashe  
ments.  
dried I  
most I  
Middle  
the Mi  
Deers  
Shape

an Inch in Breadth, much resembling the Inside of Novemb.  
a Racker, and pierced through like that for pas-  
sing the Gut through to make the Netting. The  
Netting that is in the Snow-Shoes, which is  
worked in the same manner as it is in the Racket  
(only the Mashers larger) is of Deers Sinews dried.  
To keep the Piece of Juniper which surrounds  
the Shoe more firm, and the Sides together, there  
are two Bars put a-cross, which are mostly of  
Juniper, and which Bars divide the Shoes into  
three Compartments, that in the Middle is the  
largest and longest. There is a thick Piece of  
a dried Gut of a Deer, which runs a-cross the  
Shoe, about four Inches from the Bar, which  
is next the round End, or fore Part of the Shoe,  
and is made fast to such Bar by a Piece of dried  
Gut, which passes behind the Bar; and, behind  
that, a kind of Lacing, not Net-work, as is in the  
rest of the Shoe. This Lacing keeps the cross Slip  
of dried Deer Gut at the stated Distance from  
the Bar, and from this Slip to the other Bar, or  
that which is nearest to the narrow End, there  
is Net-work, but the Mashers are larger; and the  
Sinew the Netting is of, is thicker than what the  
Mashers and Sinew are in the other two Compart-  
ments. The Lacing which is between the Slip of  
dried Deer's Gut that goes a-cross, and the fore-  
most Bar, is only from each Side towards the  
Middle, about a Third, leaving an Opening in  
the Middle; and in this Part the Slip of dried  
Deers Gut is arched or circular, confined to that  
Shape by the Netting behind it, and which ex-  
tends

Novemb. tends to the hinder Bar, this Opening is for the fore Part of the Foot, so as the Toes do not touch the opposite Bar, as it would bruise them, the other Part of the Foot is on the Netting, fastened by two Strings or Straps of dressed Deer Skin which pass over the Toes, round the Foot and the Heel, tied in a Manner as to be easily shaken off, without using the Hands, the Shoe hangs principally by the Toes, and the fore Part of the Foot, and when the Foot is lifted up in walking, the Shoe hangs Horizontal, and from the Heel, which meets the Shoe again as the Foot is put down, in walking you shoot your Foot forward, lifting one Shoe so high as you may not strike the other, It causes a very awkward Gate, but is presently acquired. These Shoes, as well as the Manner of Cloathing in Winter, is after the Example of the *Indians*, and the Shoes are made by the *Indians* for the People at the Factory. There is no passing the Snow without such Shoes, for any length of Way, and where the Snow is not deep, as of about twelve or fourteen Inches you will not sink with them above half an Inch, but in the Woods and Plains, or such Places in which the Snow is deeper you will sink two or three Inches.

As there could be but few Snow-Shoes got, for the People, these they could procure were assigned to those of every Tent that hunted, the People of every Tent having their several Province, there being seven Persons in a Tent (including

clud  
also  
ing,  
Part  
othe  
Wo  
Day  
and  
serv  
We  
Saw  
Eng

A  
befic  
and  
new  
on M  
visio  
read  
fon v  
light  
ward  
made  
allow  
serve  
ner,  
Gam  
pick  
brew  
Spru

cluding the Paetron, or he who commands, and Novemb.  
also a Boy) two of the People were kept to Hunt-  
ing, which Term they give to going a Shooting of  
Partridge; they also set up Rabbits Snares. Two  
others were employed to cut and bring home  
Wood, and there saw it, sawing as much every  
Day as would last for Firing twenty-four Hours,  
and having always as much cut down as would  
serve for a Fortnight's Firing, that in excessive  
Weather they might only have it to saw. The  
Saws and Hatchets were brought with us from  
*England.*

Another Part of the Business of one of them,  
besides Cutting and Sawing of Wood, was to go  
and see what Rabbits were in the Snares, and  
new set them; and of the other was to go  
on Messages to the House, and fetch up Pro-  
visions on the proper Days, and keep Ice cut  
ready for fetching. The Place of the fifth Per-  
son was to Cook; he got the Breakfast by Day-  
light for the Hunters, then for the others; after-  
wards swept his Tent, cleaned the Things up,  
made the Cakes and baked them, Flower being  
allowed instead of Biscuit, the Biscuit being pre-  
served until the going to Sea. Dressed the Din-  
ner, the Time for which was Sun-set, and, if any  
Game was brought Home, it was his Place to  
pick it: Twice in the Week he and the Boy  
brewed Spruce Beer, though they had no true  
Spruce nearer than twenty Miles, but they made

Novemb. use of the Tops of small Pine Trees. \* This Beer was much preferable to the Water of thawed Ice, and it prevented the People's being Costive, which was a general Complaint of every Body during the Winter, and for this Reason the Factory Servants, when they go to reside Abroad at a Tent, take Molosses with them to mix with their Water: The further Business of the Boy, besides assisting in Brewing, is to light and keep up the Fire, bring in the Billets, fetch Ice, make the Beds, and assist in any other Way he could.

Just after Sun-set was the usual Time that the Hunters repaired Home, especially if successful, by which Time as many Billets were got into the Tent as would be necessary for the Night and Morning Fire; the Tent Door was made up, Dinner got, afterwards a good Fire which made the Tent impenetrable to all Cold; and, as every Man was allowed half a Pint of Brandy a Day

\* To brew this Beer, the Kettle being near full of Water, cram the Kettle with small Pine; from one Experiment you will judge the Quantity of Pine that will bear a Proportion to your Water, let the Tops of the Pine be boiled in the Water until the Pine turns yellow, and the Bark peels, or the Sprigs strip off readily on being pulled; then take off your Kettle, and the Pine out of the Water, and to about two Gallons of Liquor put a quarter of a Pint of Molosses; hang your Kettle on, giving the Liquor another Boil until a Scum arises; then take the Liquor off, put it into a Cask in which you have before put cold Water, the Quantity of about two Gallons, if it is a twelve Gallon Cask; when your Cask is full, then take a Gun with a small Quantity of Powder, and no Wad; fire into the Bung-hole, it will set the Liquor a working; in about twenty-four Hours stop the Cask down, and the Liquor will be ready to drink.

with

with proportionable Sugar, they made Spruce <sup>Novemb.</sup> Beer, Flip, most generally, with which they smoaked their Pipes, and about eight o'Clock to Bed; when in Bed they could not be more sensible of the Cold, than when up, having a Quantity of Cloaths to cover them; but notwithstanding there would be Ice on the Blankets in the Morning, from the Freezing of their Breath, and Icicles near a Foot long, hanging down from between the Logs at the Ends of the Tent, the farthest from the Fire; if there were any Water left in the Kettles, or if a Kettle was full of Water, it would be froze all solid before the Morning, but it had not that Effect on the Spruce Beer, which being placed near the Fire, there could be no Fear as to its Freezing all Day, and at Night, when the Fire was out, it would freeze but very little.

The Tents had each of them three Bras Kettles, two larger, one smaller; a Cask for their Beer; Bowls, Cans, and Spoons; a double Saw; a single Saw; also small Hatchets; a large Wood Axe; and three or four Fowling-Pieces. Once every Week they fetched their Provision from the House where the Captains resided; but were only allowed five Days Dinners; three of which were salt Meat, two Fish; the other two Days the People must provide for themselves. This was intended to make the People exercise themselves in Hunting, to provide themselves for those two Days; and that it would also be two

Novemb. Days in a Week for fresh Provision ; and was a Saving of the other Provision.

The Person who went to the House for the Provision, drew it on a Sled ; of which every Tent had one or two. These Sleds were made of Barrel-Staves, straightened, and paired, so as to be very thin. The Sleds were about thirteen or fourteen Feet long, and a Foot and Half broad. Every Length of these Staves were knit to another Length by a Piece of Wood, which went across the Ends of the two Lengths ; and which Picce of Wood was fastened both to one and the other, by Pegs drove through it, in two separate Rows ; so that in the Drawing of the Sled, as the Ends of the Lengths of the Staves are not fastened to each other, but it is this Slip of Wood, which holds them together, these Lengths play and twine over rough Ice, or any Unevenness on the Surface, as though they were Joints. From one End of the Sled to the other (excepting the Front, where the Sled turns up) they were two Strips of Wood nailed to the Sled, near the Edge, on both Sides. In these Strips there were Holes made, to pass a small Rope through, and so fasten Provision, or whatever else is put on the Sled. The Front of the Sled turns up more than a Foot ; and there are two Pieces of Rope, one on each Side, to keep it in that Position. The Head of the Sled being thus turned up, it disperses and turns away the Snow ; for if it was flat or low the Snow would obstruct the Sled, and  
make

make it bury itself. The Sled is drawn by a small Cord, the two Ends of which are fasten'd to the two Pieces or Strips of Wood that pass on both Sides the Length of the Sled ; and the Person who draws the Sled, passing the Rope over his Shoulder, and under the opposite Arm; will draw the Sled over the Snow, and well loaded, with great Ease. At the Factories they have large Dogs, which they make use of to draw their Sleds, having suitable Harness ; and all the Carriage which is performed in these Parts, is either by Men or Dogs ; they having no Horses, or other Animals, which they can employ for this Purpose.

What those who go out a Hunting principally kill, in the Winter, are Partridge and Rabbits. The Partridge they shoot ; but the other they mostly take by the Snare. The Partridge, as soon as the Winter sets in, begin to go in Flocks, sometimes two hundred in a Flock, which the Hunter endeavours to get out upon the Plains or the Ice ; and he there keeps them constantly on the Scare, by firing small Charges of Powder at them, they rising and settling again just before him, and so keeps following them until they are tired, and he hath made them as tame as Chickens ; then he kills almost as he pleases. Some of the Factory Servants and *Indians* use a Whistle, in which they imitate the Hawk ; and when they see the Partridge are likely to take a far Flight, will,

Novemb. will, by their Whistling, cause the Partridge to pitch.

The Partridge were in pretty great Plenty until the first Week of *December*; and then that Plenty ceased; occasioned as well by there not being so much Snow upon the Hills, as in the low Lands where we were; and they could there get to feed on the Cranberries and Dewatterberries, which last all the Winter. They also were drove from the Parts where we were, by the Number of People that were incessantly after them, and would not give them Time to flock. In severe Weather they yield no Sport, keeping in the Woods. The best Time, in good Weather, is in the Mornings and Evenings; then they are out of the Woods, amongst the Popular upon the Bank-sides of Rivers or Creeks, or on the Islands.

There are Pheasants, though but few, much like to our *English* Pheasants, which abide during the Winter, and are double feathered. There is also, besides these, white Partridge, another Kind, which they call a Wood Partridge, much like to an *English* Partridge in Shape, but differing in Colour, which much resembles that of a *Guinea* Hen; or is a mottled White and Grey; and though these Partridge shift their Feathers in the same Manner as the white Partridge do, having also double Feathers; yet there is no Alteration

tion

tion  
Part  
the  
of P  
the  
Sort  
fame  
Kin  
Wo  
is of  
and  
com  
away  
of t  
Yar  
to P

T  
but  
Win  
ter o  
mak  
Trec  
each  
the  
or t  
conf  
ter f  
Hei  
whic  
Braf  
Trec

tion as to the Colour, as is mentioned of the white Partridge; nor is there of the Pheasant, or of the Hawks, or Kites; all which have a Change of Feathers, but no Alteration as to Colour; and the Hawks and Kites, of which there are various Sorts (as well as the Pheasants) seem to be of the same Species, in all other Respects, with those Kind of Birds which we have in *England*. The Wood Partridge hath a red Comb over his Eyes; is often killed as he sits sleeping on the Ground; and at other Times there is more Danger of your coming too near him than of the Bird's getting away; for often, when a Hunter lights upon one of these Partridges, he is forced to step some Yards back, for fear his Shot should tear the Bird to Pieces.

The Rabbits do not burrow as in *England*, but get aside Stumps or fallen Trees; and in Winter scratch Holes in the Snow. The Hunter observes their Tracks in the Snow, which they make as they go out a Nights to feed; fells small Trees with the Branches on, and lays a Tree on each Side the Tract, leaving just the Width of the Tract open; and the Trees stretching eight or ten Feet to the Right or Left, the Rabbit is confined, in a manner, to his Tract. The Hunter sets up two Sticks a-cross, about five Feet in Height, which are to carry a Pole, one End of which is elevated, and the other made fast to a Brass Snare, placed in the Opening between the Trees, and confined down in such a Manner by  
three

Novemb. three Sticks, and tied with so slight a Knot, that as soon as the Rabbit is taken, the Snare slips, and up goes the Pole; and, by being thus hung in the Air, the Rabbit is preserved from the Wolves, Foxes, Cats, and lesser Vermin, presently freezes to Death, and most commonly must be brought to the Fire before the Snare can be got off. Where there is a great Run of Rabbits, there shall be a Hedge of forty Trees in Length, leaving Openings where the Tracts are, and setting up Poles. In light Nights little Success is to be expected. After Snows the Snares are generally all to be moved, as the Rabbits will then have new Tracts; and sometimes the Foxes, by frequenting the Hedges, will drive them from their Haunts. It is easier Trapping them when they haunt amongst the Poplar and Brush, on the River or Creek Sides. Find out where the Brush is thick on each Side their Tract; and this you thicken by sticking Sticks in amongst it; then you take and bend down a Piece of the Poplar or Alder to your Snare, which answers the Purpose of your Tossing-Pole; but setting or rectifying of Snares is very unpleasant Work, as you are obliged to hold your Hands so near the Snow, which will oblige you every two or three Minutes, from the Intenseness of the Cold, to put your Hands in your Mittins for Warmth.

What was killed, either of Partridge or Rabbits, bore no Proportion to the hundred Dozen which Mr. *Hudson's* People killed, of Partridge; nor

nor  
Tho  
used  
like  
and  
led.

T  
ter,  
Moo  
shoo  
of th  
Tree  
falls  
him  
muc  
and  
Claw  
short  
Hair  
are v  
exce  
stroa  
stick  
Han  
Porc  
sidle  
whic  
dians  
eat H  
Ring

nor of the eighteen hundred Dozen killed by Sir *Thomas Button's* People ; nor had the People used all the Industry possible, would any thing like either of those Numbers, of both Rabbit and Partridge, nor of Partridge only, been killed.

The People only saw three Deer all the Winter, none of which they killed. One of Capt. *Moor's* Ship's Company killed a Porcupine, shooting him in the Tree ; but it is the Custom of the *Indians*, if there is a Porcupine upon the Tree, to cut it down ; and when the Porcupine falls with the Tree, they kill him, by striking him over the Nose. The Make of the Body much resembles that of a Pig ; hath small Eyes and Mouth, Feet like a Land Tortoise, with large Claws, is covered with a long bristly Hair, and a shorter Hair under that ; and under this shorter Hair his Quills lie concealed very thick ; they are white, with a brown Point, the longest not exceeding four Inches in Length, and which, on stroaking your Hand upon the Hair, immediately stick to the Hand ; and as you take away your Hand, they come also sticking to it. When the Porcupine finds he cannot get from you, he will sidle towards you, to touch you with his Quills ; which are of so penetrating a Quality, the *Indians* stick them in their Nose and Ears, for to eat Holes, for the placing their Nose and Ear-Rings.

Novemb. Two People set out from *Churchill* Factory, and at Night built a Barricado to lie under. Next Night returned to the same Barricado, and there found a Wolf lying dead. Looking upon him could perceive no Marks, in his Skin, of his being shot, or any ways wounded; but opening the Wolf's Mouth found it full of Porcupine Quills.

The Porcupine moves very slowly, as he turns the Snow up with his Snout all the Way it goes, which makes his Track very plain; and when his Track is once fell in with, the Porcupine is soon overtaken. The Porcupine gets up into a Pine or Juniper-Tree, and there stays until he hath barked it both Body and Branches. The Juniper is the most favourite, and what he feeds on is the Rind between the Bark and the Wood. This Animal is very good Eating.

The most of the Provision our People procured, in the Winter, was the Effect of their own Industry. By our not going to *Port Nelson* we were deprived of the Assistance of the *Indians*, which was one of the principal Motives urged in the Council for our Wintering there. Those *Indians* who were mentioned to come Aboard us, when the Ship lay in five Fathom Hole, and were to hunt for us in Winter, were of those they call *Home Indians*, always in Parts near the Factory, not going far up into the Country, and are in-  
tirely

tirely at the Governor's Direction. The Story Novemb.  
 which they had related with respect to *Albany*,  
 their being discharged, and going Southward,  
 was all meer Invention. If they were not Spies  
 employed by the Governor, they answered the  
 Purpose; for it is highly probable, that it was  
 upon what they said, or what the Governor learn-  
 ed from them, that the Governor dispatched a  
 Parcel of *Indians*, then at the Goose-Tent, which  
 is a small wooden House built near the extreme  
 Point of *Hays's* Island, or Point of Marsh, and  
 who had come down to kill Geese, up into the  
 Country; laying a strict Injunction on others  
 not to come nigh us (there being many, at that  
 Time, shooting Geese for the Factory) and hur-  
 ried them away as soon as the Season was over,  
 This Injunction was not so strictly observed, but  
 some came Aboard us, both before we were in the  
 Creek, as well as after. But what we got of  
 Provision from them was very trifling; some  
 few Fish, a small Quantity of Venison, some few  
 Ducks and Geese. As soon as the House was in-  
 habited, some of the Factory Servants came, and  
 erected a Tent near it; their Business being to  
 fetch down some Wood, which had been felled,  
 and sawed into Plank, about six Miles off; but  
 another Purpose was, to prevent our having any  
 Intercourse with the *Indians*; and a Tent with  
 two of the Factory People was kept (to watch  
 that the *Indians* should not come to the House)  
 all the Winter, and while the Ships continued  
 in the Creek; the *Indians* knowing that there

Novemb. was a Person who would give an Account to the Governor of their Coming, it discouraged them from coming; and very little fresh Provision, for that Reason, was got from them.

I should have excepted (when I said that the *Indians* were sent away) some few that were detained, to dress the Skins for the People's Tockies. And Capt. *Smith* propos'd to Capt. *Moor* their speaking to the Governor, that some of these *Indians* might be afterwards employed in killing of Partridge for both Ship's Companies. This was approved of by the Governor; and he continued three *Indians* to hunt for the Ships for a Month; but as they were neither extraordinary Sportsmen, or remarkably industrious, they killed no great Quantity of Birds. At the End of that Time two of them went with a Packet to *Churchill* Factory; so then the Hunting ceased; and on their Return there was little Game. What these few Weeks Hunting produced was all the Supply of fresh Provision which we had by Means of the Governor, excepting some Venison in the Spring; which will be spoke of.

There are *Indians* who are at all Times near the Factories, for which they kill Provision, and go a Hunting, just as the Governor gives them Direction. There are others who come at the Time the Geese are going Northward, in order to shoot Geese for the Factories, continue there in the Summer, fishing; kill Geese again, when  
going

going to the South ; and, the Season being over, **Novemb.** return up the Country. There are others who only come down to Trade, and that several Times in the Year ; others who come in large Bodies together, to Trade ; and that but once in a Year. They are all wandering People, live by the Chace, and in Tents ; incamping as Convenience or Necessity requires.

The first Time the *Indians*, who frequent the Southern Shore of *Hudson's Bay*, saw any *Euro-peans*, was as early as the Discovery of the Bay itself, by *Mr. Hudson*. \* “ For when the Ice began to break up, there came a Savage to the Ship, as it were to see and be seen ; being the first they had seen in all the Time ; and who was well intreated by *Mr. Hudson*, under a Sense of making some Advantage by it ; presented the Savage with a Knife, Looking-glass, and Buttons ; who received them thankfully, and made Signs that after he had slept he would come again. Which he did ; drawing a Sled after him, and upon it two Deer, and two Beaver Skins. He had a Scrip under his Arm, out of which he took the Things the Master had given him ; laid the Knife on one of the Beaver Skins, and his Glass and Buttons upon the other ; and so gave them to *Mr. Hudson*, who received them ; and the Savage took those Things which *Mr. Hudson*

\* *Purchas's Pilgrims*, B. III. p. 602.

“ had

Novemb. " had given him, and put them again in his  
 " Scrip. Then the Master shewed him, for  
 " which he would have given him one of his  
 " Deer Skins; but the Master would have both;  
 " which he had, but not willingly. After many  
 " Signs, as they understood of it, of People to  
 " the North, and to the South, and Promise,  
 " after so many Sleeps, he would come again,  
 " he went his Way; but never came more; nor  
 " could they afterwards meet with any People,  
 " though they were sensible that they were fre-  
 " quently near them, as they would set the Woods  
 " a Fire in their Sight." Neither Sir *Thomas*  
*Buttan*, nor Capt. *James*, saw any of them; they  
 were not seen from the Time of *Hudson* to the  
 Year 1667; then there was an Expedition for  
 Trading with them; which succeeded so well as  
 to be a Foundation of the *Hudson's Bay* Compa-  
 ny's Patent, which was granted them in the  
 Year 1670.

The *Indians* who inhabit the South-West Part  
 of *Hudson's Bay*, and who are properly the *Krick*  
*Indians*, or *Kilistinons*, are much like the other  
*Americans* who inhabit the Northern Part of *Ame-*  
*rica*, as to the Make of their Persons; they are  
 stately, tall, well made People, in good Propor-  
 tion, and of a vigorous Constitution, sprightly,  
 strong, and active; no way inferior to the *Euro-*  
*peans* in the Make of their Persons; but have ra-  
 ther the Preference on their Side. They are Peo-  
 ple of a good Understanding, of a lively Imagi-  
 nation,

nati  
 are  
 Vice  
 othe  
 them  
 their  
 Peop  
 racte  
 whic  
 ment  
 are a  
 ries;  
 resid  
 Hom  
 corru  
 guilt

TH  
 almo  
 the S  
 to th  
 contri  
 lour v  
 which  
 a Pie  
 much  
 Great  
 they r  
 their J  
 and th  
 Bodie  
 Fire,

nation, easy Conception, and good Memory ; November. are not without the Sense of a Deity ; condemn Vice ; are kind, affable, and humane to each other ; pay a great Respect to the Aged amongst them, and a Deference to each other ; conduct their Affairs with as much good Sense as the People of politer Nations do theirs. This Character is not just with respect to those *Indians* which are called the *Home Indians* ; who, as mentioned, constantly frequent the *Factories*, and are always employed in *Hunting* for the *Factories* ; but those who come occasionally down, and reside at other Times up the Country. These *Home Indians* being become mostly a debauch'd corrupted People, stupid, idle, drunken, and guilty of all manner of Vice.

The *Indians* are born white ; but their going almost naked when Children, the Greasing them, the Summer's Sun, their being so much exposed to the Air, and the Smoak of their Tents, all contribute to give them that brown Gypsy Colour which they have. The Greasing themselves, which is customary with them all, is either with a Piece of Deer's Marrow (which they dry up much after the Manner of Hogs Lard) or Bears Grease, Beaver Oil, or Goose Grease, which they rub in the Palms of their Hands, then over their Face, and at Times over their whole Bodies ; and they will before a fresh Anointing of their Bodies, sit in the Tents with their Backs to the Fire, and with a Stick like a Lath, but the Edges turned,

Novemb. turned, scrape the Grease off them; this Greasing in Summer is a Defence in some Measure against the Musketoës, and is used at other Times for no other Reason as I could learn, but that it keeps their Joints pliant and supple; but on the other hand it makes them stinking and nasty; they having not found out the Way, as they refine upon nothing, to correct the Rankness of their Oils or Grease, by Essences and Perfumes, which more polite Nations have a long Time substituted in the room of them.

The Habitations of the *Indians* (which we call Cabbins or Tents) are sufficiently wretched; they are round; probably, as that is the most capacious Figure, and the easiest erected, with the Materials they make Use of; which are a Number of small Poles, that are set to lean one against the other, so as they meet a Top, and extended below; these are covered with dressed Deer Skins sewed together; but the Deer Skins do not go quite to the Top, so as to cover the upper Part, or to where the Poles meet; which Part is left open to vent the Smoak, and let in the Light. Their Fire is in the Middle. The Bottom of the Tent is strewed with Tops of Pine-Trees. They lay with their Feet to the Fire, and with their Heads to the Tent-Sides; and in the Tent they must either sit or lie down, for there is not Room for them to walk; nor do they ever walk about, as is the Manner with us. They are at all Times either lying down, or sitting, unless they are a  
Hunt-

Hunting. They are as much surprized to see Novemb.  
 the *Europeans* walk backward and forward in the  
 same Place, as the People of *Spain* were of whom  
*Strabo* speaks, to see some Centurions of the *Ro-*  
*man* Army watch after that manner; they thought  
 they were out of their Wits, and offered to lead  
 them to their Tents; for they thought that they  
 must either keep quietly in their Tents, or that  
 they must have a Mind to do themselves a Mis-  
 chief.

You enter the Tents by turning a Piece of the  
 Skin, to which there is a Stick fastened on the  
 Inside it, to make it flap and close; they have no  
 Bolts or Locks: The Tent Door is never made  
 fast but when they are all out; and then it is by  
 laying Logs of Wood against it, seemingly to  
 keep out the Dogs more than for any other Pur-  
 pose. The Door is generally to the S. W.

These Tents are seldom pitched in the Mid-  
 dle of Woods, or upon Heights, but upon Creek  
 or River-sides, in Bottoms; which may be done  
 both for the Convenience of getting Water or  
 Ice; as also in respect of Warmth; their Cover-  
 ings being but the Thickness of one Skin, they  
 must be very cold; so they are under a Necessity  
 to get all the Assistance they can from a Situa-  
 tion; and in Summer their Tents are not habi-  
 table upon the Account of the Musketoes, unless  
 they are full of Smoak.

Novemb. When they are poor, and have not Skins to make a Tent of, they then only make Use of a Barricado, which is a thick Hedge made of the upper Part of young Pine-Trees, as is mentioned to be done by the Factory People when out of a Night, at a Distance from their Tent, or the Factory, with a Fire in like Manner before them; and if there is any Snow, they clear it away from the Spot. These Barricades are also used by the *Indians*, when they are Travelling either alone or two together, from one Part to another.

How far Decency might cause these *Indians* to cloath themselves, does not appear; but it might be that and the Nature of the Climate; for though the Boys are admitted to go almost naked, until they are ten Years old or more, the Girls wear a Frock, such as will be mentioned hereafter, quite from their Infancy. To make their Cloaths of Skins, was not only a Thing plain and obvious in itself, as well as suitable; but they are under a Necessity of so doing, as those Parts supplied nothing else which would answer the Purpose; and their Industry taught them to make the Skins soft and pliable, and to be clear of that Stiffness which would make them in a manner unserviceable. This Kind of Cloathing was in Use amongst all Nations in the earliest Times; and they agreed with the *Indians* not only in Use, but also the Form they made the Skins up in.

The

The *Indians* have a large square Outer-Coat, Novemb.  
 much like a Blanket in Shape and Size, made either of Deer Skin, or a Parcel of Beaver Skins sewed together. It hangs loose from the Shoulders, trailing along the Ground, and is tied across the Breast with two Strings; the Part that is behind the Neck, and on the Shoulders lay in Rolls; sometimes they set it up hollow behind like a Cope; at other Times it lies flat like a Cape hanging Part down each Arm. It is painted on the Leather Side of the Skins with Strokes of Red and Black, like a Border, near to the Edge or outer Part of the Coat, round the Bottom, and some Way up the Sides. This outer Coat is all chipped, or hanging in Thongs of about an Inch Width, and three Inches long, those at the Bottom; but those up the Sides, and nearer the Head, less; some of which they also paint red. The best dressed People, in the earliest Times, were those who wore the Skins of Beast, which they had taken amongst their Herds, or that they had killed in the Chace. They were a long Time the Royal Mantle of Princes, and the Ornament of Heroes. *Hercules* was not dressed otherwise than in the Skin of a Lion of *Nemea*. One of the *Argonauts*, following *Jason* to shate in the Expedition of *Colchos*, sailed for the Coast, and arrived covered with a beautiful Bull's Skin, which reached to his Heels. *Acestes*, in *Sicily*, met *Aeneas*, who landed on his Coast, dressed in the Skin of a *Lybian* Bear, having his Bow and

Novemb. his Arrows. *Bacchus* and his Followers had no other Cloathing than wild Goat Skins; also of Tygers, of Panthers, and of Leopards, which Beast afterwards they have put to his Charriot; though, without Doubt, the Invention is much later than his Time.

In *Europe, Asia, and Africa*, many of the Nations had not absolutely other Cloathing for many Years. At the Time of *Craſus*, a *Lydian*, whose Name was *Sardanis*, got the Anger of that Prince, for giving him Advice, Just in itself, but contrary to his Ambition, for persuading him from making War against the *Persians*, who lived at that Time like Savages: <sup>a</sup> “ You go, says he, “ Great King, to make War upon a People, “ who have no other Apparel than Breeches of “ Hide, and some Skins with which they cover “ themselves; who inhabiting a barren Country, “ have no Choice as to what they will eat, but “ must eat what they can get; nor is this Meal “ helped by Wine, their Drink at all Times being nothing but Water. They have no Figs, “ nor any thing that is good; so there is nothing which you can propose to gain by the “ Attempt, should you be successful; but on “ the other hand, reflect, you have an Infinite to lose, should you be defeated.”

<sup>a</sup> *Herod. Lib. N. 71.*

b  
Vel  
farr  
Sar  
Tbr  
D  
Egy

A  
and  
long  
ed w  
cloat  
Wo  
pres  
Leop  
othe  
Need

A  
Ufe  
ment  
with  
woul  
less.  
wher  
ver,  
is ha

b T  
a Var  
f Arr  
b Hom

<sup>b</sup> *Tacitus* assures us, the *Germans* had no other Vestments than Firs. <sup>c</sup> *Herodotus* assures us the same of the *Africans*; <sup>d</sup> *Varro*, of the *Gauls* and *Sardians*; <sup>e</sup> *Virgil*, of the People of *Scythia* and *Thrace*; <sup>f</sup> *Arrian*, of those of the *Indies*; and <sup>g</sup> *Diodorus Siculus* reports the same also of the *Egyptians*.

After they had found out the Making of Silks and Linnen, they did nevertheless use Firs for a long Time amongst those very People who worked with Thread or Silk. All *Homer's* Heroes are clothed in Lions Skins, or in the Skins of Bears, Wolves, or Goats, &c. <sup>h</sup>; and *Paris*, who is represented as a Beau, dressed in nothing but a Leopard's Skin; yet *Penelope*, *Helen*, and the other *Grecian* and *Trojan* Dames were excellent Needle-Women.

As the Ancients agreed with our *Indians* in the Use of Skins, so they did also in the Management, in making them flexible, and not stiff, without which Way of preparing them, they would be hard, would shrink, and be quite useless. They, like them, leave the Hair on Skins, where the Fleece or Fir is soft and warm, as Beaver, Otter, &c.; but, like them, where the Hair is hard and bristly, they then take it from the

<sup>b</sup> *Tacit. de Mor. Germ.*  
<sup>d</sup> *Varro, Lib. II. Rei rusticæ.*  
<sup>f</sup> *Arrian, Lib. VIII.*  
<sup>h</sup> *Homer, Iliad. III.*

<sup>c</sup> *Herod. Lib. IV. N. 189.*  
<sup>e</sup> *Virg. Lib. II. Geor.*  
<sup>g</sup> *Diod. Sicul. Lib. I. c. 7.*

Skins;

Taci-

Novemb. Skins ; as they do with Mouse Skins. Besides thus managing the Skins, the Ancients also, like our *Indians*, used to set off or ornament them ; which consisted either in the Manner of cutting them, chipped or hanging in Thongs as we have described the *Indians* ; or in the Figures which they drew upon them, or the Colours which they painted them with, in which also they agree with our *Indians*, who, as mentioned, have like a red or black Border figured near the Edge of the Coat, and paint the Thongs which are at the Bottom, and in Part up the Sides.

\* The People of *Lybia* appear to be the first who have set this Art in Usage, which we learn from *Herodotus*, when he tells us that the *Greeks* borrowed the Habit and the *Ægis* of the Statues of *Minerva* from the *Lybians* of *Numidia*, with this Difference, that to the *Ægis* of the *Lybian* Women, the pendant Fringes, are not Serpents but simple Thongs ; but, as to the rest, the Dress is the same ; and the Name itself shews, that the Habit of the Statues of *Minerva* is borrowed originally from the *Lybian* Dress ; for the Women of *Lybia* have, more than of any other Thing their Garments of the *Ægees*, that is, they are of the Goat's Skin curried, are figured and painted red ; and it is from these *Ægees*, that is, from this the Goat's Skin cleared of the

\* Moeurs de Sauvages, P. 22.

Hair, that the *Greeks* have taken the Name of Novemb. *Aiyids.*

The *Indians* make a Frock of these Skins, or *Aiyids*; which they wear under their outer Coat; this Frock is of Deer or Mouse Skin, reaching to the Knees, with a Slit only at the Neck, for the easier Getting it on, and a Slit a little Way up each Thigh; mostly with Sleeves that reach to the Wrist, and are joined to the Coat by a Seam three Inches down the Arm; the lower Part they paint with two red Strokes, and also clip the Bottom to make it hang in small Thongs like Fringe, some of which they also paint red; and at the Part where the Arms are sewed on, or joined, they usually ornament with Fringes made of Beads, and Bra's Tags, or with Work which is of Porcupine Quills, after the Manner of an Embroidery, and is what they call *Nimmy Hogging*.

Those Nations which left off the Use of Skins, yet they retained the Form in which they had wore them in the Make of their other Habits; from thence the close Coat, and outer Robe both of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, and which is answerable to the Frock and Tockie, or outer Coat of the *Indians*. The *Greeks* had the close Coat, and the outer Coat also, which agreed with the *Romans Toga* and *Tunica*; and the Distinction, according to the Criticks, consisted only in the Manner of wearing the outer Coat, which Coat of

the

Hair,

Novemb. the *Greeks* the *Latins* for that Reason called *Pallium*.

These outer Coats the *Indians* make Use of to cover themselves with on Nights, and that seems to be the Custom amongst the *Jews*. <sup>a</sup> When under Barricadoes, they cover their Heads as well as the rest of their Body; in bad Weather also wear them over their Heads, excepting those who buy a kind of Hoods at the Factory. The Use of this Tockie therefore is sufficiently evident, and the Use expresses the Reason of the Shape and make of it; as to Covering the Head with it; the *Romans* did the same at Times with their Robe: In Winter, or when Hunting, they tie this Tockie with Strings over their Breast, and gather it up with their Belt close round them, so as not to reach further than their Knees, for the same Reason are their Tokies made not to reach lower than their Knees, that they may not be troublesome in Walking; when they wear those Tockies in their Canoes, they tie them in Folds over their right Shoulder, and so pass them under their left Arm, by which Means they have free Use of their Arms; they have Sleeves of Skin with the Hair on, which they wear in Winter, when they have their Tockies close about them; these Sleeves have two Strings over the Shoulders and one a-cross the Breast, which keeps them on.

The Woman's Dress is like the Man's, with no other Difference than that the Frock hath Slits

<sup>a</sup> Exod. c. 22. v. 26.

under

made under the Arms, and the Frock is some- Novemb.  
 thing longer than the Frock which the Men wear;  
 under the Frock both Sexes have Skins, which  
 pass between their Legs, and are fastened to a  
 Strip of Deer Skin tied above the Hips; a Man  
 when in the Tent will strip himself of all his  
 Cloaths but this; the Woman never undresses  
 herself further than her Frock.

The Stockings are of the same Materials as the  
 Frocks, shaped according to the Leg, or as a  
 Spatterdash, leaving a Border where they are  
 sewed up on the Side, of about four Fingers in  
 Breadth, which they scollop at the Edges; these  
 Stockings reach quite to the Thighs, and are  
 made fast to the Strip of Deer's Skin round their  
 Waist, gathered below the Knee with Garters  
 made of Porcupine Quills coloured, and Deer's  
 Sinews very neat. These Stockings, as well as  
 Shoes, they seldom wear in Summer. These  
 Stockings according to Father *Lastau*, are exactly  
 like those of the *Parthian* Kings of whom he had  
 seen many Statues. Their Shoes are of Deer Skin,  
 or Mouse Skin stripped of the Hair, the Sole and  
 upper Part the same, without Heels, and ga-  
 thered round the Instep as a Purse; the Shoes  
 are often worked up the Front with Porcupine  
 Quills, variously coloured, some of these Shoes,  
 as more convenient for keeping out the Snow,  
 and at other Times the Wet of the Swamps reach  
 some Way up the Leg, after the Manner of a  
 Sandal.

Novemb. As to the Fashion of their Cloaths, they still retain the same, but have changed the Materials since their Acquaintance with the Factories; for their Tockies, they often use Blankets, and they who winter near the Factories have generally Cloath Stockings: They have also acquired a Custom of wearing Caps made of Woollen Cloth, and of an oblong Form, sewed up on one Side, and at one End with a Piece of Tinsel round the Part next to the Face, or a Piece of Worsted Lace; and at the Corner which will be upon the Crown of the Head a Bit of Rabbits Down sewed on, or a red Feather. Those *Indians* who come down to trade will also buy Tinsel, laced Hats with a dyed Feather stuck up in them, they will buy Woollen Coats made after the *English* Manner, trimmed with Worsted Lace. The Hair on the right Side of the Head they cut quite close, and the Reason seems to be, that their Hair might not be in the Way upon their taking Aim. This was the Custom of many Nations, but the *Maffici*, who boasted their Descent from the *Trojans*, had their Hair so cut on the left Side; there was great Distinction amongst the Ancients as to the Tonsure, and it was expressly forbid the *Jews* to make any Baldness on their Heads,

The left Side of the Hair is left long and gathered up in a Knot, which hangs as low as the Ear, just on the Summit of the Crown a Lock is tied up and stands about three Inches above the Head,

Head, like a Feather; but this is rather the Fashion of the young Men, and seldom amongst those who are advanced in Years. Some wear round their Heads Fillets as narrow as Tape, made of green or red Worsted, with two Borders of Beads, with which they tie up their Hair also that is on the left Side, and the two Ends of the Fillet hang down upon the left Shoulder. Others have Wreaths of Skins, as Cats Skins round their Heads, others a Band made of an Herb like Box which they smoak with their Tobacco; some have Birds, such as Ravens or Hawks, slit and spread, so put upon the Crown of their Head, with the Head of the Bird over their Forehead. These Bands round the Head seem originally to be for no other Purpose, but, as they were without other Covering on their Heads, to keep their Hair tight and close, that it might not be troublesome by the Blowing of the Wind; it is observable, the Women never wear these Bands. The ancient Use of these Bands is evident from the Fauns, the Satyrs, the Sylvan Gods, and the Followers of *Bacchus* being crowned with them; and <sup>a</sup> *Pliny* particularly mentions, *Ferunt que, primum omnium Liberum Patrem imposuisse capiti, suo ex edera: Bacchus* as the first that wore one of Ivy round his Head. These Bands became in Time a Mark of Distinction and Respect, and were given as a Recompence to those who carried the Prize at the Feasts instituted in Honour of the

<sup>a</sup> *Plin. Lib. xvi. c. 4.*

Novemb. Gods. The *Romans*, the Enemies of Kings, had many Sorts of these Crowns, for to acknowledge the different Services done to the Republick; this Way of Reward being introduced amongst them by *Romulus* their Founder, he crowning *Hostus Hostilius*, the Grandfather of *Tullus Hostilius*, for being the first Man that entered the Town of *Fidena* with a green Wreath; and these Bands or Crowns at length became the distinguishing Mark of Royalty.

They will greafe their Hair, stick Feathers in their Hair, and ornament it with Bunches of Rabbits Hair, or Bits of Firr; and also with Beads, or a Bit of white Stone which they find in these Parts, and polish until it much resembles white Glas. The Women wear their Hair long on both Sides, reaching to their Shoulders, which they part on the Top, and will sometimes tie it up in Bunches on each Side their Face; at other Times it hangs loose; they greafe their Hair as the Men do, stick Bits of Firr in it and Beads, and paint it red, which is a Practice also with the Men.

The Women wear round their Necks Necklaces of three or four Rows of Beads, which hang down almost as low as their Breasts; some wear large narrow Rings of Brass, and at each Ear will have eight or ten Strings of small Beads which shall reach to their Shoulders, which Beads they procure at the Factories. The Men as well

as the Women have their Ears pierced, as also Novemb.  
their Nose; Men will have frequently a Bit of  
Firr, which is of some extraordinary Kind, hang-  
ing to their Ear by a Bit of String; others have  
Ear-Rings made of Beads, of a white Stone,  
which we have mentioned, polished, and Bits of  
Brass. Some will have, through the Grizzle of  
their Nose, a String with a Bit of Copper about  
the Size of a Sixpence hanging to it, of a trian-  
gular Form; others a Pipe-Bead of about two  
Inches long, and two small Beads at the End of  
such Pipe-Bead; this which is so pendant from  
the Nose flaps on the upper Lip, and you may  
see them sometimes reach at it with their Tongues.  
These Ornaments of the Nose are used by many  
Nations at this Time, and were formerly an  
Ornament of politer Nations, as may be seen ex-  
pressly in *Isaiab*, c. iii. v. 21. —

Upon their Wrists the Women wear Bracelets,  
which they get of Tin or Brass, since they have  
known the Factories; are of about two Inches  
broad; they carve them themselves, but their  
Workmanship is no Way extraordinary. The  
Men have Collars made of Cloth, with Beads or  
Bits of white Stone sewed on them; both Men  
and Women have also Belts which they girt their  
Tockie up with, and sometimes wear upon their  
Frock, of four Fingers in Breadth, made of  
Porcupine Quills; also of Beads run upon small  
Deer Guts, the Outside of the Belt Leather, and  
these Belts have at each End a Parcel of small  
Strips of Leather to make them fast.

The

The Bracelets and Ear-Rings were very ancient, *Abraham's* Servant presents them to *Rebecca*; the *Jews* borrow Ear-Rings of the *Egyptians*, but, in the Judgments threatened by *Isaiab*<sup>a</sup> against the *Jews*, there is Mention of taking away the Chains and the Bracelets, the Headbands and the Ear-Rings, the Nose-Jewels, &c. The *Persians* wore a Collar about their Necks, and Bracelets on their Arms, and that the Collars were in Use amongst the *Gauls* is evident from the Account given of *Manlius Torquatus*, who was named *Torquatus* from *Torques* a Collar, which *Anno U. C.* 393. he took from the General of the *Gauls* whom he had killed; and *Pliny*<sup>b</sup> mentions the *Roman Ladies* wearing Gold Bracelets, Rings on all their Fingers, Gold Necklaces, or Collars, Ear-Rings, and other Ornaments.

The Men and Women paint their Faces as well as their Hair, sometimes colouring half their Face with Vermilion, which they procure at the Factories; Red being their favourite Colour; at other times only make Strokes with their Fingers dipped in the Vermilion down their Nose, or cross their Face, just as they fancy, without any Order or Method. What keeps the Paint on is the Grease, with which they anoint their Face before they lay the Paint on; sometimes

<sup>a</sup> *Isaiab*, Lib. iii. 19, 20, 21. <sup>b</sup> *Plin*, Lib. xxxiii. c. 3.

the  
wh  
of  
Th  
am  
thei  
pain  
and  
the  
pain  
the  
the l  
expr

H  
S

It  
allud  
Faces  
Bloo  
they  
white  
amon  
the T  
it was  
of the  
rity, t  
*Boryst*  
*Basilia*

<sup>a</sup> *Mo*  
<sup>c</sup> *Virg*

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

199

Novemb.

the Men colour their Faces with Black Lead, which is a Sign of their being angry, and also of their Hunger; and when they go to conjure. The *Minium* or red Paint was so much esteemed among the antient *Romans*, as to be applied to their solemn Uses. <sup>a</sup> Upon Feast Days they painted the Statue of *Jupiter* with Vermilion, and besmeared the Bodies of those that entered the City in Triumph with *Minium*. <sup>b</sup> They painted in the same Manner all the Statues of the Gods, of the Demi-Gods, of the Heroes, the Fauns, and the Satyrs; and what is evidently expressed in those Verses of *Virgil*: <sup>c</sup>

*Pan Deus Arcadiæ venit, quem vidimus ipsi  
Sanguineis ebuli baccis minioque, rubentem.*

It is to this also which the Poets and Painters allude, when they give the Fauns and Satyrs Faces extremely heightned, and of the Colour of Blood. <sup>d</sup> It was usual with the *Æthiopians* when they went to War, to paint their Bodies half white, and half black: It was the Custom amongst all the Nobility of the same People, in the Time of *Pliny*, to paint their Bodies red, and it was also the favourite Colour for the Statues of their Gods. We know from sufficient Authority, that the *Indians*, *Africans*, *Neuri* upon the *Borysthenes*: The *Geloni*, *Thupagetæ*, *Budini*, *Basilidæ*, and the yellow-haired *Agathyrsi*; the

<sup>a</sup> *Moeurs de Sauvages*, P. 48. <sup>b</sup> *Pliny*, Lib. xxxiii. c. 7.  
<sup>c</sup> *Virg. Ecl. x. v. 23.* <sup>d</sup> *Pliny*, Lib. xxxiii. c. 7.

Novemb. *Pitts* and several other Nations painted themselves.

On the Triumphs of the *Romans*, which were as the Representation of *Jupiter* in his Glory, the Conqueror, going to the Capitol to sacrifice to that God, appeared in his Car, his Face painted with Vermilion. *Camillus* triumphed in that Sort according to <sup>a</sup> *Pliny*, and St. *Isidore* of *Seville* says it was observed by all, who were decreed that Honour.

This kind of Painting, which we have been speaking of, wears off, and requires frequent Renewing, but there is another kind of Painting practised by the *Indians*, whose Country is North-West of *Cburchill* Factory, whither they come to trade, and the common Appellation given them is that of the Northern *Indians*; they will have several Strokes in their Cheeks, the Colour being in the Flesh, black and much after the Manner of those Marks which are so commonly made upon People's Arms with Gunpowder never to be removed. It is from this kind of Painting the *Pitts* had their Name, that Name says St. *Isidore* of *Seville*, perfectly agrees with the Figure which their Body makes, which the Workman paints, by Graving many Figures with many small Pricks, which he makes with a Needle, and in which he infuses the Juice of Plants that grow in their Country, to the End

<sup>a</sup> *Pliny*, Lib. xxxiii. c. 7. <sup>b</sup> V. *Moeurs de Sauvages*, p. 39. that

that, their Nobles being marked upon all the Members of their Body, they may distinguish themselves from the Commonality by the Number of the Characters. *Solinus* speaks of the same People, much after the same Manner as *St. Isidore*, but the Northern *Indians* having no Distinction of Rank amongst them, being all equal, there is not that Difference in the Marks, as amongst the *Picts*; as to their Nobility, what hath been mentioned is only to shew a Sort of Agreement in the Manner of their Painting in general.

This kind of Painting, which Father *Lastau* calls the *Cauftick*, became disused amongst the politer People, and only retained by the Barbarians; it was looked on infamous amongst the *Romans*, they Branding their Slaves and Criminals with Marks of the same Nature.

The *Indians*, whom we have mentioned to paint their Frocks and their Tockies, use no other Art than taking a Stick, the End of which they dip in Goose-Gréase, and afterwards in the Colour, and then Paint, which remains for a long Time before wore off; they only draw Lines of black and red, not attempting to delineate any Beast or any kind of Animal; the red and black have been the two Colours always in Use amongst them, and before they were supplied by the Factories with the Vermilion and black Lead, they got their red Colour from

D d

some

ed them-

which were  
glory, the  
sacrifice to  
be painted  
in that  
of *Seville*  
e decreed

have been  
s frequent  
of Painting  
y is North-  
they come  
ion given  
ms; they  
cheeks, the  
much after  
re so com-  
n Gunpow-  
n this kind  
that Name  
grees with  
which the  
y Figures  
makes with  
the Juice of  
to the End

*vages*, p. 39.  
that

Novemb. some Weeds which grew in the Mud, in Lakes or Rivers, and their black they had from a Mineral or a Stone, which Stones are frequently to be found by those who know them.

I believe it will appear from what hath been said, that there is a great Uniformity in the Habits which the *Indians* use, and those which were used by the People of the earliest Times, not in one Part of the Dress only, but through the whole of it; but as the People became more polite as Kingdoms and Empires arose, and Arts and Sciences increased: From thence proceeded an Alteration, both in Custom and Dress, from the State of Nature to that which was more suitable to their present Circumstance. But, as this hath not been the Case of these *Indians*, they have not made any considerable Alteration in the Manner of their Life, but trod in the Steps of their Ancestors; so they have had no Occasion either to change their Habit or Customs; as the following them was most suitable with their Manner of Life. It is impossible to conceive that there can be so great Uniformity of Dress and Customs, as there is between these People and the most antient, or the People of the earliest Times, without their being originally one and the same People; and as the People either in *Europe*, *Asia*, or *America*, were the first and earliest People in those Parts with whom they so agree in their Dress, or their Customs; that is an Evidence of the early Departure of these  
 People

*Discovery of a North-West Passage.*

203

People into *America*. I speak as to the *Kinski* Novemb.  
*Indians* in particular, whom I apprehend from  
their Manners to be the first Comers, and to have  
been drove to the Northward by later Settle-  
ments.

Marriage is in Use amongst these People, for  
as to that chimerical Community, there is no Rea-  
son to believe it ever subsisted. *Cecrops*, who is  
represented in profane History, might bring it  
under some better Regulation, with Respect to  
the People he govered, and substitute Solemniti-  
ties at the Contracting of these Alliances, and in-  
stitute Monogamy, or the having but one Wife ;  
but profane History also tells us of Marriage  
prior, instituted by *Jupiter*, who hath his Wife  
*Juno*. Marriage, with Respect to these *Indians*,  
carries an Interest with it, which induces these  
*Indians*, and must have induced all People in the  
same Circumstance of Living ; the securing to  
themselves Children, who would be a Preserva-  
tive for them against Want in their old Age.  
And, in this Sense, Children might well be ac-  
counted Riches. The *Indian* who hath Children  
hath so many to hunt for him, when he is him-  
self incapable, and without which he might be  
liable to starve. Therefore it is apparent, that  
amongst those People who lived by the Chace,  
and amongst whom it is pretended this Commu-  
nity was used, it could never be ; by reason that  
appropriating a Wife would have greater Advan-  
tages. The Community again would be such a

Novemb. State as would be quite contrary to the Interest of the Woman ; for whilst there was a Community, and no Marriage, she would have no Dependance as to her being maintained ; she could not hunt for herself, nor promise herself to share in that which is caught by another ; but when she became a Wife this would be secured to her, and there would be a further Obligation on the Man to maintain her, as the Children she should have would belong to her ; and if separated would go with her, and he would lose the Benefit of them. This is sufficiently shewn by the People whose Manners we are speaking of, and which will be made apparent as we proceed.

The poetical Gentlemen and some ancient Authors represent the People in the earliest Times, not only ignorant of Arts and Sciences, but will not allow them common Understanding, or a Knowledge superior to Brutes ; they describe them without a Capacity to conduct themselves better than these Animals ; they feed them on Acorns and Roots ; lodge them in Dens ; allow them the Enjoyment of the softer Sex promiscuously ; make them void of all Virtue and Reason, until there comes some Law-giver or other, who infuses Virtue and Reason, and forms a regular Society. Had we not sacred History, which shews the contrary, the least Reflection would detect the Falshood of it ; would not let us doubt but that they had Reason sufficient to discern between what was convenient, and what was not

not fo  
attain  
and C  
and  
those  
I belie  
ry, a  
not o  
ing o  
cumf  
Affai  
theirs  
contr  
are in  
with  
circu

TI  
of M  
no In  
any p  
rents  
Child  
diti  
Child  
if a C  
the C  
marr  
of th  
and t  
Tent  
grow

not so, to direct them in the Means properest to <sup>Novemb.</sup> attain their necessary Ends, such as proper Food and Cloathing, and the other Necessaries of Life; and after that they had found by Experience those which were best, would pursue. And I believe this will be found the same upon Inquiry, amongst all People called Barbarous People, not only with Respect to the *Indians* I am treating of, that those People who are otherwise circumstanced do not act more reasonably in their Affairs than what the barbarous People do in theirs. And as this Case of Community appears contradictory to the Way of Life these *Indians* are in, we may judge it was equally the same with those People, in the earliest Times, who were circumstanced like them.

The young Women are intirely, in Respect of Marriage, directed by their Parents; they shew no Inclination or Forwardness to Marriage, or any particular Regard to any young *Indian*. Parents will often agree for the Marriage of their Children, before one of them shall be born, conditionally; that if it is a Girl your Wife is with Child with, my Son shall marry her. Afterwards if a Girl is born, he who hath the Son will take the Girl Home, and maintain her until she is marriageable. Others contract for the Marriage of the Daughter not eight or ten Years old, and the intended Husband will take her to his Tent, and keep her until such Time as she is grown up.

A brisk

Novemb. A brisk young Fellow, and a good Hunter, never fears the not getting of a Wife. He applies to the Father of her whom his Intention is upon, or her Brother, if Head of the Family, asks his Consent, and makes him a Present, after the Nature of the Country, of Beaver, or other Furs. The Consent obtained, he comes to the Tent at such Time as the Woman is there, and tosses into her Lap a Present, which, if near the Factories, is generally of a Piece of Cloth; her Acceptance of this, a Consent. The Marriage is then concluded, and the Contract passed. Upon which he afterwards comes, of a Night, to the Woman, and lies under her Tockie; is admitted to take hold of her Hand, sings to her, and, perhaps, pays several of these Visits before she speaks to him. Sometimes the Man, after the Woman's Acceptance of the Present, will take to Hunting along with the Family she belongs to, and continue in the same Tent. It will be a Month or two before there is a Consummation of the Marriage; the Time of which is always a Secret to every one but themselves.

It is generally usual for the Husband to carry his Wife to the Father's Tent, or where he lived before amongst his own Relations, or set up a Tent of his own; though sometimes they stay with the Wife's Relations. No Feasts are made, either at the Time of the Contract of Marriage, or at the Consummation. But, sometimes when  
the

the H  
an O  
with,  
Relati

The  
out E  
ry.  
Famil  
been  
ners  
pentin  
band  
band  
attend  
sents  
serve  
Oxen,  
a Jave  
she is  
hand,  
This  
the on  
says th  
ties in  
Views  
So the  
Body,  
yond;  
Husba

the Husband takes the Wife away, if he hath had an Opportunity to kill any thing, to make a Feast with, he will then do it, to entertain the Wife's Relations and Acquaintance.

Novemb.

The Simplicity of these Marriages are not without Example, both in sacred and profane History. The Behaviour of *Abimelech* to *Rebecca* and Family have Circumstances similar to what hath been mentioned. *Tacitus* speaking of the Manners of the *Germans*, mentions something very pertinent to what has been said: Says to the Husband the Wife tenders no Dowry, but the Husband to the Wife. The Parents and Relations attend, and approve of the Presents; not Presents adapted to Feminine Pomp, nor such as serve to deck the new married Woman; but Oxen, and a Horse accoutred, and a Shield with a Javelin and Sword. By Virtue of these Gifts she is espoused. The Woman, on the other hand, makes the Man a Present of some Arms. This is the Whole of the Marriage; these are the only Ceremonies which attend it. — Better, says the same Author, still do those Communities in which none but Virgins marry, and their Views and Inclinations are only to be a Wife. So they take one Husband, as they have one Body, and one Life, without a Thought beyond; no further Desires; nor is it having the Husband, but the State which they admire.

The

Novemb. The Consequences of these Marriages are a strict Alliance between the Husband and the Wife's Relations ; and, reciprocally, between the Wife's and the Relations of the Husband, as to their assisting each other.

When an *Indian* finds he is a sufficient Hunter, able to maintain more than one Wife, he will then procure himself a Second, and, perhaps, a Third ; a Number which they seldom exceed. There seems no Superiority or Distinction amongst them, or Difference as to first or last married ; all equally contribute to the Work of the Tent ; have no Jealousies or Quarrels ; but if the *Indians* go Abroad to visit some other Tent, he usually takes the youngest with him. As to their Children there is never any Difference. The eldest Son (whether by the first or second Wife) at the Death of the Father, becomes the Head of the Family.

The principal Reason of Poligamy amongst these *Indians* seems to consist in the Expectation of a Number of Children. But it is observable amongst these *Indians*, though the Women are of a vigorous Constitution, that they have not many Children. There is no Proportion in the Number of Children of these People to what must have been formerly in other Parts, and especially in the North of *Europe*, from whence came those Inundations of Barbarians, who frequently ravaged, and afterwards ruined the *Roman Empire*.

As

As  
rents  
Wom  
rents,  
marry  
Husb  
does  
other  
if she  
with h  
future  
tent,  
North  
that th  
her ba  
leave  
her Re  
have h

The  
leave  
Custom  
Wife  
from th  
her Chi  
History  
which  
posing  
fert, no  
from th  
tions.

As to Divorces, if the Person whom her Pa- Novemb.  
rents have recommended is not agreeable to the  
Woman, she will quit him, and go to her Pa-  
rents, who will never oblige her to return, but  
marry her to some other; and sometimes if the  
Husband and Wife do not agree, or the Husband  
does not maintain the Wife, she will go to an-  
other *Indian*, who will take her as his Wife; and  
if she hath a Child or Children, she takes them  
with her, as they are her Riches, her Security for  
future Maintenance; the Husband must be con-  
tent, except (as I am informed) amongst the  
Northern *Indians*, he will go and battle the Man  
that the Wife is gone to, and if he beats will bring  
her back again. Sometimes the Husband will  
leave the Wife, and then she must depend on  
her Relations. But it is seldom, when once they  
have had Children, that these Divorces happen.

The Law of *Romulus*, that a Wife should not  
leave her Husband, seems to allude to such a  
Custom as here mentioned. The Custom of the  
Wife going to the Relations, when separated  
from the Husband, and the Reason of her taking  
her Child with her, explains what is said in sacred  
History of *Hagar*, and takes from that Severity  
which *Sarah* is supposed to be guilty of, in pro-  
posing her being exposed to starve in the De-  
sert, no more being intended than a Separation  
from the Tent, and her going to her own Rela-  
tions. The whole Tenor of the Story, the more  
it

Novemb. it is considered, the more it will support this Conjecture.

The Reward of any Infidelity, or a private Amour (tho' a Thing exceeding rare) is a Cudgel, or what is the highest Disgrace, the Cutting off the Woman's Hair.

*Tacitus* mentions a Treatment of this Kind, used for the same Offence, amongst the *Germans*.  
 " Amongst a People so numerous, says that Au-  
 " thor, Adultery is exceeding rare, a Crime in-  
 " stantly punished, and the Punishment left to  
 " be inflicted by the Husband. He having cut  
 " off her Hair, expels her from his House, na-  
 " ked, in Presence of her Kindred, and pursues  
 " her with Stripes throughout the whole Vil-  
 " lage." The Northern *Indians* are said, upon  
 this Occasion, immediately to cut their Throats.  
 The Husband will sometimes seek an Opportu-  
 nity of shooting such Person as hath done him an  
 Injury.

When the Wife or Wives die, it is usual for  
 the *Indians* to marry again, seldom continuing  
 for any Time Widowers. They never marry  
 in a direct Line, as the Father to the Daughter,  
 or the Son to the Mother; nor do they marry  
 in the first Degree of the Line collateral between  
 Brothers and Sisters of the same Father and same  
 Mother.

The

TH  
 Men  
 men a  
 the F  
 killed  
 paunc  
 Traps  
 Seafor  
 and dr  
 the W  
 where  
 the Sp  
 Huntin  
 build t  
 Husba  
 if they  
 never a  
 which  
 bands,  
 and the  
 and har

The  
 Mother  
 are two  
 men ma  
 which i  
 and eigh  
 almost a  
 four Inc  
 running

The sole Care of the Husband, and so of the Novemb.  
Men in every Family, is the Chace. The Women are to build the Tent, procure the Wood for the Fire, dress the Provision, and when a Deer is killed, go, by the Men's Direction, to the Spot, paunch it, and fetch it Home. The Women also set Traps for Martins or Rabbits, and fish at proper Seasons; make Snow-shoes, sew their Cloaths, and dress their Victuals: Also, upon a Remove, the Woman draws the Sled; the Man appoints where he will have the Tent built; they go to the Spot, get one erected against his Return from Hunting; or if he is present, he never assists to build the Tent. The Wife's Attendance on the Husband begins from the Time of their Marriage, if they reside in the same Tent. The Wives are never admitted to pull off their Socks, or Shoes, which they wear in Winter, before their Husbands, but are obliged to go out of the Tent, and there take them off; then they bring them in and hang them up to dry.

The Infants are bred up by their respective Mothers; they suck, and continue it until they are two Years of Age, or upwards. The Women make Use of a Cradle for their Children, which is of a flat Board, about three Feet long, and eighteen Inches broad, a Piece of thin Wood almost as thin as Pasteboard fixed upon it, about four Inches high, rounded at the lower Part, but running parallel towards the upper Part of the Board;

Novemb. Board, to this Piece of Wood they sew a Piece of red Cloth, about three Fingers broad, making near the Edge a Quantity of Eyelid Holes. Within the Space encompassed by this Piece of Wood is the Child laid, put in a couple of Wrappers, and behind its Head a Cat's Skin, as a Preservative for the Child's Head, in case the Cradle falls, and then they pass a Strip of Deer Skin through the Eyelid Holes of the Cloth, and lace the Child in, so as also to confine its Hands. The Women carry these Cradles at their Backs, with the Child's Back to theirs, and, in case of bad Weather one of the Child's Wrappers is long enough to pull over its Face; they take the Children frequently out of the Cradle; they go on their Hands and Feet before they learn to stand upright, so crawl to the Mother for the Breast, and take the Pap under her Arm, she sitting on the Ground, and working with her Hands at the same Time as the Child is at the Breast.

They are peculiarly careful in Winter of keeping the Children's Feet warm with Rabbit Skins or Furr in their Shoes, and round their Ancles, and also their Legs and Knees, and half up their Thighs, with Stockings of Skin with the Furr on, or Cloth; but the Boys have only a Skin Tocky for their Bodies, which is open before, but with Arms to it; have nothing on their Backsides but a Skin which passes between their Legs, and the Girls have only a Frock which is close before, and reaches below their Knees.

Their



y a Piece  
 d, mak-  
 d Holes.  
 Piece of  
 of Wrap-  
 kin, as a  
 case the  
 of Deer  
 oth, and  
 s Hands,  
 ir Backs,  
 in case of  
 appers is  
 hey take  
 lle; they  
 y learn to  
 for the  
 Arm, she  
 with her  
 is at the

of keep-  
 bit Skins  
 r Ancles,  
 f up their  
 the Furr  
 y a Skin  
 n before,  
 on their  
 een their  
 which is  
 nees.  
 Their

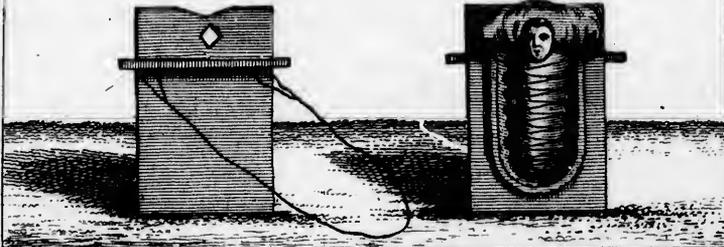
*A Romb*



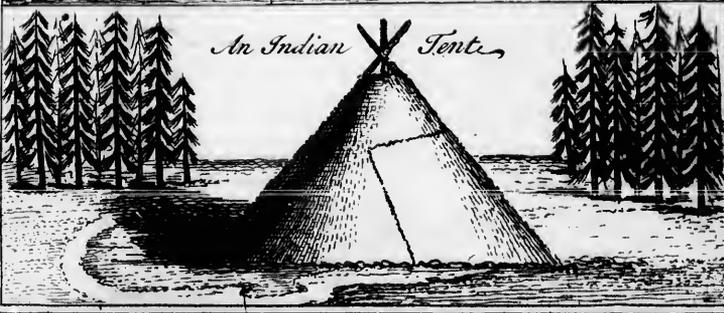
*A Calumet*



*The Back part of a Cradle. The Front of a Cradle.*



*An Indian Tent*



*[The text on this page is extremely faint and illegible. It appears to be a multi-paragraph document, possibly a letter or a report, with several lines of text visible but not readable.]*

the  
a C  
thru  
Str  
paf  
in  
at H  
wea  
Sun  
unt

be r  
as a  
war  
prac  
of r  
Hu

T  
all t  
proc  
both  
tent  
for  
have  
any  
Care  
amo  
wher

Their Passion for Ornament is so great, that Novemb. they do not omit it with respect to their Children, a Child of five Months old, will have a Wire through its Nose, with a Bead fixed to it; and Strings of Beads upon its Wrists. When they are passed the Use of the Cradle, the Mother then in journeying from Place to Place carries them at her Back: This Manner of letting the Children wear little Cloathing, and the Boys to be in Summer quite naked in the Tents, is the Practice until they are grown up.

They seem in the first Part of their Time to be under the Care of the Mother; they, as soon as able, do little Offices about the Tent, afterwards learn to Trap and Fish with her, also practise with a Bow and Arrow at the Shooting of small Birds, and, as they grow up, become Hunters and assistant to the Family.

This Education, how simple it may seem, is all that they want; and answers their Purpose to procure such Supplies and Necessaries of Life, both for themselves and others, as they are content with; and is attained without Correction, for *Indians* never beat their Children. They have an extreme Tenderness for them, equal to any *Europeans*; but do not express it in such Caresses, or other Shews of Affection, as is usual amongst fond Parents, especially to Children when young. They are docile, behave well to  
those

Novemb. those in the Tent with them, and shew Obedience to their Parents; and afterwards for the most Part turn out in Life, regular and virtuous. The *Indians* themselves say, that as soon as the Faults they commit when young, they have not Reason, and, when they grow older, they will have Reason, and will follow its Dictates, and correct their Follies.

I forgot to observe in the proper Place, that, when an *Indian* Woman is with Child, she observes no Difference, attends to the same Fatigue, and supposes it assists her Labour and strengthens the Child; when the Time of her Delivery is, she is attended by others, and the Men quit the Tent, or she is separated off by a Curtain of Mouse Skin: Their Labours are easy, and the next Day the Woman will be abroad in the Woods with her new-born Child at her Back, to get her Fuel, and pursues her usual Business as before.

These *Indians* have no manner of Corn, Pulse, or Roots in use amongst them; probably because they live by the Chace, which causes a frequent Removal, and, being in single Families, have neither Opportunity to attend it, or Strength to cultivate it; for it cannot be attributed to the Climate; wild Corn being to be found even so high to the Northward as *Hays's* Island, by *York* Fort. Their whole Subsistence is Flesh, which they chiefly boil so as to let the Gravy be in it;

the

the Northern *Indians* eat it almost raw, and blame the others saying, they lessen their Strength by eating their Victuals so much dressed as they do. They have now by Trade from the Factories Brass Kettles in which they boil, otherwise they make use of Nockins, which are of Birch-Bark, take a square Piece, slash it at the four Corners some Way in, then there are four Sides which they can set up, and they sew together with a Rim, round the Top they put an Edge of Porcupine Quills, these they make of various Sizes, and are frequently to be seen in *England*. The Northern *Indians*, who are not provided with Kettles, put Water in these make Stones red-hot and put into this Water to heat it, and so dress their Meat: The other *Indians* also use them who are not better provided, setting them over the Fire, and they boil Water very well. They have round Platters made of Wood, which are the Knobs of Trees hollowed and smoothed, both Inside and out, with a Beaver's Tooth, they have Cups also, with Handles made out of Knobs of Trees; the Purpose of Spoons and Knives is answered by their Hands: They have no fixed Times of Eating, but are led by their Appetite. When they wanted to separate the Parts of a Deer, before they knew the *Europeans*, they used Instruments made of Bone, and sharp Stones, which they fastened with Thongs of Leather at the End of a cliff Stick.

If

Novemb.

If they roast their Provision, it is by running a pointed Stick like a Skewer through it, and sticking one End in the Ground close by the Fire; they eat the Entrails of all, either Fish or Birds, especially if Provision is short; and which they are not very nice in cleaning. From the Meats they boil they have the Advantage of the Broth, which they call *Sagamite*, and in Winter Weather fet it out in the Kettle to freeze till it becomes Ice, and so portable Soop.

From the Severity of the Winter, they draw the Advantage of having their Provision froze; so it is kept sweet, and is a ready Supply as they want; though it happens amongst some of the *Indians*, that, so long as they are in Possession of any Provision, they will not seek for more; the Consequence of which is, perhaps, a Fasting for a Time, but this they will bear with a surprizing Patience, and without Complaining; and they have also, when they cannot succeed in Hunting, a kind of Reserve, which is their Dogs, of which there are generally some belonging to every Tent, These they kill, and a Dog is reckoned at all Times as a great Delicacy. The Way of slaughtering the Dog is, the tying the Mouth, then taking a streight Awl and prick it into the Heart; afterwards singeing him, then roasting him intire, Entrails and all before the Fire: It is said where Dogs have failed, and no Provision was to be got, there have been Instances, but these thought very

ver  
Ch  
bar  
in  
son  
wil  
Tr  
  
We  
serv  
ther  
the  
  
A  
whe  
of  
serv  
they  
habi  
Out  
  
If  
they  
will  
every  
is to  
him,  
roun  
is re  
of th  
per is

very extraordinary, of their destroying their Children, and of Wives destroying their Husbands and eating them; but these Acts are done in Extremity, and through a pressing Necessity; some Times when they can get no Provision, they will live on the inner Bark of Juniper and Firr Trees.

In Summer and in Spring, and when the Weather is not frosty, they have a Way of preserving their Provision, by taking out the Bone, then parboiling it, and afterwards drying it in the Smoak; they will also smoak-dry Fish.

Are never wanting in Hospitality to each other, when they come to a Tent, they will give them of what they have; but this Ceremony is observed, that they never go into a Tent, though they are the nearest Relations to those who inhabit it, as a Brother or Sister, but stand on the Outside until invited in by those in the Tent.

If they have great Success in Hunting, and they have Neighbours about them, then they will make a Feast, upon which a Stick is sent to every one, who it is desired should come; this is to the Men, every one brings his Dish with him, they all sit down upon the Ground in a round, being there some Time before the Victuals is ready, filling that Time with a Conversation of their Country and of their Travels; the Supper is prepared by the Master of the Tent, and,

Novemb. when ready, he gives it to one of the Company to serve out, which is a Mark of Esteem; perhaps that Person gives it to another thinking him more worthy of the Honour; he that serves, sings, telling them there is Provision in Plenty, they must eat heartily, and they are all welcome, or to that Effect; they then all thank him, which is done by expressing the Word *Obo*, the usual Thanks of these People. The Fat is poured amongst the Meat, and afterward they eat the *Sagamite*, or what it is boiled in, and eat until they cry out, I have enough; the Women are seldom invited, but they come, creep under the Side of the Tent behind their Husbands, and they get as much as the Men; what is left of any Man's Eating, it is not returned, but he carries it Home. They have no Bread as mentioned before, but they have dried Deer's Fat, much after the Manner of Lard, which they eat as Bread, after the Eating, they go to Singing, and then put an old Man in the Middle, clearing the Fire away, who beats on a kind of a Drum, and then they go to Dancing; sometimes it is a Feast of raw Meat; then, after Thanks, they take it up and carry it Home; they have no Liquor at these Feasts but Water, or the *Sagamite*, which they may as well drink as eat; so they cannot be intemperate, they knowing nothing of strong Liquors until their Acquaintance with the *Euro-peaans*.<sup>a</sup> As to the *Sagamite* or Broth, when *Gideon* entertained the Angel, he is said to put

<sup>a</sup>Judge, Ch. vi. v. 19.

the Flesh in the Basket, and the Broth in a Novemb. Pot.

These Feasts are generally made on no other Account but Plenty; they have no particular Days, no Commemorations, all Days are to them the same, nor do they regard Births or Marriages, except if the Husband chance to have a Plenty of Game, when he is going to take his Wife Home, he may make a Treat to her Friends as hath been mentioned, and before they go to War.

The Feasts amongst the *Ægyptians* were celebrated with great Temperance, and it was in common amongst other People, as a Father *La-fitau* shews on good Authority; and it is certain that the *Persians*, only drank Water in his Time according to the Account of *Herodotus*. These Feasts are with that Simplicity as the rest of their Customs; when their Bellies are full, they are in high Spirits. The Women enliven the Conversation, they get to Singing and then to Dancing; there are many who have seen amongst politer People Feasts determined in that Manner.

Their Singing is very Mean, and the Subject usually composed as it is uttered, and consists of a few Words often repeated, which will be Thanks to the Party who entertains them, or

<sup>a</sup> *Moeurs de Sauvages* Tom. II. P. 191.

Novemb. about Hunting, or that there will be a good Goose Season, or something equally trifling; and they will all be singing at one Time, then dancing; the Dancing chiefly consists in the Motion of their Feet, stirring them along the Ground, without any Activity or Motion of the Body, or any lifting up of the Feet; the Head is inclined, and they hang down their Arms.

The *Israolites*, after they had adored the Golden Calf, sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to play, that is, to dance and sing, according to the Interpreters; and, we may suppose, it was after the Fashion of the *Egyptians* whom they were now imitating, as to their Idol.

There is a great Similitude between these Feasts and those instituted by *Lycurgus*. The Manners he established amongst his People were those of the Isle of *Crete*, who were themselves but Copiers from others<sup>b</sup>. At these Feasts none but Men were entertained; each contributed, but he who had extraordinary Success in the Chace was obliged to furnish the Feast with a good Part of his Game. Every one had originally his particular Dish, but that was afterwards altered; and the Person who provided, distributed, and gave that which was esteemed as the most favourite Pieces to those who were most distinguishable, either for their Prudence in Councils, or Bravery

<sup>b</sup> *Herod. Lib. I. N. 71. Mœurs de Savoye. &c. Tom. I. p. 520.*

in Action, or their Exercise in the Schools. And Novemb.  
the Declaration of the Person who distributes,  
there being a Plenty of Provision, &c. is not un-  
like that Proclamation made at the Feast of *Ly-*  
*curgus*, of the Name of him who makes the Feast,  
of the Reason of it, and which was for him a Sub-  
ject of Praise for his indefatigable Application to  
the Chace, his Readiness to bear Fatigue, and that  
every one was sensible of the great Affection he  
had for his Country, and his Generosity to his  
Fellow-Citizens. The Manner of the *Indian*  
Feast will be plainly perceived in this Feast of  
the *Spartans*, with such Alteration as the Differ-  
ence of Circumstance had made; but the strong  
Lines of the other are plainly to be seen through  
all the Shading, whence they came: And as the  
*Spartan* Laws were copied, in Part, from the *Cre-*  
*tans*, and their own Alterations considered, it  
would not have been strange if these Feasts had  
retained less of what was seemingly the ancient  
Manner of Feasting, and by them used before  
they formed themselves into a Government.

The Manner of the Singing, and, amongst  
the *Indians*, Dancing, is in itself mean, and not  
well to be understood, but by either the Hearing  
one, or having the Sight of the other. Their  
Musick is equally mean. Their Drum, or Tam-  
bour, is a Skin stretched tight over the Mouth of  
a Kettle, or any thing that will yield a Sound,  
and it is beat with a Stick.

Novemb. Father *Lafitau* observes that, <sup>a</sup> “ amongst the  
 “ Number of Instruments invented, it is difficult  
 “ to determine which were those that were first  
 “ instituted ; they having had various Changes,  
 “ according to the Times, and the Taste of the  
 “ People. Moreover, they have had different  
 “ Names, and they continued to give these  
 “ Names successively to several Instruments  
 “ which they had substituted in the room of the  
 “ former.

“ But those, nevertheless, which they figure  
 “ in the Orgies of *Bacchus*, and the Mother of  
 “ the Gods, appear to be but two Sorts, of which  
 “ the most ancient Authors give us any Ac-  
 “ count.

“ The one a Kind of Tambour, called *Tympanum* ;  
 “ and the other a spherique Machine,  
 “ named *Rbombos*, upon the Account of its Fi-  
 “ gure ; and it made a Noise to which they gave  
 “ the Names of *Crotalum* and *Crepitaculum* : It  
 “ is that which *Apollonius* expresses to us in that  
 “ Passage, where the *Phrygians* prayed to have  
 “ an Opportunity to establish the Usage of ap-  
 “ peasing the Goddes *Rhea* with the Rhomb,  
 “ and the Tympanum.”

As our *Indians* agree with these in the Use of  
 the Tympanum, in as near a Resemblance, as to

<sup>a</sup> Moeurs de Sauvages, Tom. L. p. 204.

Musick, as they can ; so also they have the Rhomb, which is a Kind of Rattle made of Skin, and small Stones within Side, to make a Noise, with a Handle, by which they shake it. It is an Amusement they use as they sit in their Tents, to sing to the Rattle of it. Novemb.

The Humanity of these *Indians* the one to the other is great, which is instanced in the Case, that if one of the *Indians* have several Children, such *Indian* will part with one of such Children to another *Indian* who hath lost his, by Way of Consolation, and that *Indian* adopts his Child, so given, as it becomes in every Respect as his own.

They make great Use of Tobacco, which is that of *Brasil*, sold at the Factories ; and they have an Herb, whose Leaf is much like to Box, which they dry, then mix with Tobacco, which moderates the Heat of it. For want of this they will mix Buds of Poplar with their Tobacco. They have Boles of Pipes, which they make of a Stone, and fix a short Stick to it, to draw the Smoak by ; and if they get *English* Pipes they always use them very short. It is a high Compliment, and the greatest Sign of Friendship, to smoak out of one and the same Pipe with them.

This Custom of smoaking Tobacco, or other Herbs, seems to have been well known amongst the Ancients ; but being disused, as we may suppose, amongst the *Greeks*, as well as amongst the *Latins*,

amongst the  
s difficult  
were first  
Changes,  
of the  
different  
give these  
struments  
om of the

ey figure  
Mother of  
of which  
any Ac-

d *Tympana*-  
Machine,  
of its Fi-  
they gave  
*ulm* : It  
us in that  
to have  
ge of ap-  
Rhomb,

ne Use of  
nce, as to

4.  
Musick,

Novemb. *Latins*, and other People of *Europe*, the Revival of it is looked on as an entire new Practice or Invention, or as what hath never been done before. *Pliny* says sufficiently to let us know that the Pipe and Smoaking were not unknown in his Time; and that they were used physically, on certain Occasions. He instances this in a Remedy against Melancholy; and his Words are very decisive<sup>a</sup>:  
 “*Fimi quoque aridi, sed pabulo viridi pasto bove,*  
 “*fumum arundine haustum prodesse tradunt.*”  
 The Smoak of the dried Dung of an Ox fed in a green Meadow, taken into the Mouth by a Reed, will be of great Service. <sup>b</sup> As to Smoaking, *Herodotus*, speaking of the *Massagetes*, who dwell by the *Araxis*, they have Trees, says he, the Fruit of which is of such a Nature, that being put into a Fire which they have made, and which they crowd round, they will be intoxicated by it, as the *Greeks* with Wine, and in Proportion as they cast it into the Fire, so they will be more and more intoxicated, until at last they get up and sing and dance.

What *Herodotus* says of these People, *Pomponius Mela* and *Solinus* say the same also of the People of *Thrace*.

<sup>c</sup> Certain People in *Thrace*, says *Pomponius Mela*, do not know the Use of Wine. Nevertheless, when they make a Feast, they cast some

<sup>a</sup> *Pliny*, Lib. xxviii. c. 17.

<sup>b</sup> *Herod.* Lib. I. N. 211.

<sup>c</sup> *Pomp. Mela*. Lib. ii. c. 2. de *Thracia*.

Seeds into the Fire which they sit round, the Novemb. Odour of which will cause a Lightness of Spirits almost like to Drunkenness.

<sup>d</sup> In their Feasts, says *Solin*, they sit round the Fire, Men and Women, and casting some Seeds of certain Herbs therein, and which they take the Smoak of, thinking Drunkenness a Pleasure, to have their Senses quite gone, as is customary with those who have drank too much Wine.

<sup>e</sup> *Strabo*, in his Description which he makes of the Manner of the *Indians*, says, that every one carried always with him a Pouch full of medicinal Herbs.

What *Strabo* says as to medicinal Herbs carried by the *Indians* in a Pouch always about them, it is agreeable to the Practice of the *Indians*, of carrying the Herb they smoak in their Skippen-Torkin, or the Bag which they have with them, and in which they carry their Pipe, Flint, Steel, and Knife.

It was the Practice of these *Indians* to smoak Herbs, before they knew the *Europeans*, they having all their Tobacco from the Factories, with which now, as mentioned, they also mix Herbs. It is probable they had Pipes, by which they took

<sup>d</sup> *Solin*. c. xv. de *Thracum moribus*.  
P. 494.

<sup>e</sup> *Strabo*, Lib. xv.

Novemb. their Tobacco, before they had Trade with the Factory, as they have the Boles of Pipes, which they make themselves, of Stone; and the famous Pipe, or Calumet of Peace or War, or the great Pipe; they have a Taste, as the *Tbracians*, and the other People spoke of, to receive Smoak up the Noftrils, as well as by the Mouth; not as they break all their Pipes short, but as it is a Practice amongst them to take a large Quantity of Smoak into their Mouths, then shut their Lips close, and let the Smoak to come out by their Noftrils.

The Pipe Part of the Calumet, is two Feet long, made of strong Reed or Cane, amongst some of the *Americans*; but amongst these People, of Juniper, adorned with Feathers of all Colours, interlaced with Locks of Womens Hair. They also add to it two Wings of the most curious Birds they can find for Colour. The Head or Bole of this Pipe is of a red Stone polished like Marble, and bored in such a Manner as one End is for the Tobacco, and the other End fastens to the Pipe. This is the general Description of it; but they adorn the Calumet variously, according to their Genius and the Birds they have in their Country. Father *Hennepin*, in his Account of *America*, tells us, “this  
 “ Calumet, or Pipe, is a Pass and safe Conduct  
 “ amongst all the Allies of the Nation who have  
 “ given it; and in all Embassies, the Ambassa-  
 “ dors carry that Calumet as the Symbol of  
 “ Peace, which is always respected; for the Sa-  
 “ vages

“  
 “ f  
 “ r  
 “ F  
 “ f  
 “ C  
 “ t  
 “ F  
 “ p  
 “ a  
 “ a

T  
 ed fi  
 ceus  
 God  
 from  
 ple.  
 being  
 to be  
 the F  
 of th  
 and I  
 they  
 ple,  
 or o

TI  
 Cadu  
 Cadu  
 and A  
 of tha

“ vages are generally persuaded that a great Mis-Novemb.  
 “ fortune would befall them, if they violated  
 “ the Publick Faith of the Calumet. All the  
 “ Enterprizes, Declarations of War, Conclu-  
 “ sions of Peace, as well as all the rest of their  
 “ Ceremonies are sealed, if I may be permitted  
 “ to say so, with this Calumet. They fill that  
 “ Pipe with the best Tobacco they have, and then  
 “ present it to those with whom they concluded  
 “ any great Affair, and smook out of the same  
 “ after them.”

The Calumet is very ancient, as may be judg-  
 ed from the Resemblance it bears to the Cadu-  
 ceus of *Mercury*, who was the Messenger of the  
 Gods, and was a Deity which the *Greeks* had  
 from the *Egyptians*, and the other barbarous Peo-  
 ple. The Caduceus of *Mercury* was a Sign of his  
 being a Messenger, and, as such, entituled him  
 to be used as a Friend where-ever he passed; just  
 the Purpose of the Calumet, and the Agreement  
 of the Calumet with the Caduceus, both in Use  
 and Form, is almost a demonstrable Proof, that  
 they could not be the distinct Inventions of Peo-  
 ple, of those in *America*, and of those in *Egypt*,  
 or other Parts.

The Difference between the Calumet and the  
 Caduceus is, the Serpents which wind about the  
 Caduceus of *Mercury*, as is expressed by the *Greeks*  
 and *Romans*, in all the Statues and Representations  
 of that God, belongs not to the Calumet of the *In-*

Novemb. *dians*; and, on the other hand, the Pipe, which is so material a Part in the Calumet amongst the *Indians*, is not known to belong to the Caduceus. I have already observed, that the *Indians* themselves vary in the Ornaments of the Calumet, only agree in what is the most Essential of it, and the Calumet agrees with the Caduceus in like Manner in the most essential Part, as the Staff and the Wings, which were all that was received from *Apollo*, the Serpents being an Addition afterwards.

These *Indians* have no Government; every Master of a Family is without a Superior. Like Instances in the earliest Times are too obvious to need any Quotation. But when they engage in a Voyage to Trade, several Families together, in such a mixed Company it is necessary some one should preside; and also for them to have a Guide to shew the Way. So if an *Indian* who is distinguished for his being a good Voyager, and a skilful Trader, proposes to be a Guide to go down to trade with the Factory, why then the other *Indians* will join him, obey his Directions during the Voyage, while at the Factory, and upon their Return; but no longer does the Obligation continue. These Leaders are called Captains by the Factory People; and when these Captains are down at the Factory are presented by the Governours with a Tinsel-laced Coat, much like a Drummer's, with a Tinsel-laced Hat, and a painted Feather stuck in it; will have *English* Stockings  
of

of two Colours, and, perhaps, an *Indian Shoe* on Novemb. one Foot, and an *English* one on the other. He is admitted into the Factory, which the other *Indians* are not, and smoaks with the Governor; also is in the Room with the Governor at the Time of Trading, the other *Indians* receiving their Commodities at the Outside of the Factory, through a Window. All which Steps of the Captain's are to make him appear considerable in the Eyes of his Companions; and these Favours they do not attain *gratis*.

They are also *Indians* who are of distinguished Merit, that are Captains of Rivers; which is no more than that they are the leading *Indian* of the *Indians* about that River, or a Person whom the others consult in such Affairs as they think his Advice necessary in; and they will attend to what he at any Time may propose, as to going in Parties to Hunt, to War, or to Trade; but he is without Power to enforce what he would effect; they are intirely free, as to any Obedience which he can demand of them; all he can do is only by the Esteem which the People have for him; that lessened, his Authority is gone.

Where Murder is committed by one *Indian* on another, and they of separate Families, there is no Remedy, or any Way of bringing the Murderer to Justice by publick Authority; all the Satisfaction that is taken is by a private Person, as the nearest Relation of the *Indian* killed will seek

Novemb. seek an Opportunity, from a Bush, to shoot the other *Indian* who did the Murder. Then a Relation of the Murderer will take an Opportunity to shoot the *Indian* who killed the Murderer: The Relation of the last killed will seek a like Opportunity to revenge his Death; and, perhaps, it becomes, at Length, general, the Men of both Families taking all Opportunities to destroy each the other; and the Women, for Want of the Mens Assistance, are exposed to the utmost Hardships to support themselves, and are often starved. The Manner of this Revenge bears some Resemblance of what *Cain* feared after the Murder of *Abel*.

If the Person killed was of one Family, or of the same Cabbin with that Person who killed him, those of the Family or Cabbin will take an Opportunity, when the *Indian* who killed the other is drunk (at which Time all *Indians* are supposed to tell the Truth) to ask his Reasons for the Murder; if he says he did it when drunk, or can give a Reason as that it was accidental, or what shewed it was not the Effect of his Malice, he is considered in the Tent as he was before; but if he cannot excuse himself, but it appears to be a malicious Act, he is admitted still to live amongst them, but in such a despised Manner as it makes the Remainder of his Life wretched; and there have been Instances where they have not been able to bear with the Contempt, and have made themselves away. \* The Story of the Woman of

\* 2 *Sam.* ch. 14.

*Tekoa*, sent by *Joab* to *David*, to recal *Abfalom*,  
when in Exile, after the Murder of his Brother  
*Ammon*, shews us there was something of this  
Law in Practice among the *Jews*; that the Fa-  
milies had Cognizance of these Affairs. She  
feigns that she had two Sons, who quarrelled,  
and, in such Quarrel, one killed the other, and  
the surviving one, she a Widow, was the only  
Child she had. The Relations they insisted, led  
by the Prospect of the Inheritance, that the Mur-  
derer should be delivered up to them, that they  
might kill him, according to the Right which  
they had to do Justice in this Case; which  
obliged her to fly to the King, to hinder the  
Execution of their Intents, which would plunge  
her in, the greatest Affliction, and reduce her to  
the extremest Want.

Since their Acquaintance with the *Europeans*,  
that these *Indians* could obtain Brandy, the Vice  
of Drinking is pretty frequent with them; but  
whatsoever is done by one to the other when  
drunk, even if one bites the other's Nose off, it  
is excused, because it was done when he was  
drunk, and no Malice is bore.

Theft is very odious amongst them; but the  
*Indians* will practise, it when they come down  
to trade, if they can; and, if detected, will be  
afraid that the other *Indians* should know it, on  
Account of the Scandal.

Besides

Novemb. Besides the Captains there are two other Distinctions, the Doctors and Juglers.

The Doctor affects, and takes Care to see the Governor to smook with him, as well as the Captain does; buys a little Trunk of Medicines, which Trunk is filled with Sugar-Plums, *Spanish* Liquorice, and a Parcel of other Stuff much of the same Kind, and hath it brought out of the Factory, after him, by some *English* Man. The Doctor also buys Prints, which he takes Care to shew as he proceeds from the Factory to his Tent. The *Indians* who are not in the Secret of the Fee, imagine that the Doctor is certainly a Great Man, for to have such an Honour as an *English* Man to wait on him, and suppose it is all done out of Respect to his great Skill and Understanding. When the Doctor is shewed this Trunk, at the Time of buying it, he is told, this is good for a Cold, that for a Cut, &c. though they may be applied in every Case with equal good or hurt. But what they are good for, he bids his Wife to remember.

These Doctors, if I am rightly informed, are chiefly called upon in chirurgical Cases; and they have some Knowledge of Plants, with which they will do great Cures, though, probably, the Constitution of the Patient used to Exercise, and unused to Delicacies, may greatly contribute. It is this their Exercise and Temperance that causes them

them to know few Disorders; and the most frequent Remedy they use, when ill, is Sweating; which is performed after this Manner;

They cut Alder, or other pliant Sticks, and then take and stick the Ends in the Ground; so the Sticks form so many Arches intersecting one the other, high enough for a Person to sit under, or, when upon his Knees; sometimes made large enough for two. Over the Sticks they put Beaver Coats, or other warm Coverings, making a Fire at some Distance off, and in that Fire they put large Stones; when these Stones are hot, they take and carry them into the Tent, and lay them on Sand; so until the Tent is extreme hot. Then goes in the Patient, if a Woman, in her Frock; if a Man, naked; and there stays until the Tent cools, when they either run into the Water, or the Covering is flung off; and the Patient will sit scraping the Sweat off, all the Covering so flung off, and this in the cold Spring Weather; or when he goes immediately out of the Tent into the Water, it shall be when there is Ice in it, receiving no Damage.

\* *Herodotus* mentions the Purifications of the *Scythians*, who are sweated after the same Manner: He says, "that when the *Scythians* have interred their Dead, they purify, as we shall mention; first they cleanse the Head; as to

\* *Herod. Lib. iv. N. 74.*

Novemb. “ the Body, this is what they do: They take  
 “ three Pieces of Wood, which they incline  
 “ one towards the other, and on the Outside  
 “ they put Coverings of Felt; and they cast  
 “ Stones red-hot into a small Chest which stands  
 “ in the Middle; within side the Pieces of  
 “ Wood and the Covering. \* The *Lacedemo-*  
 “ *nians* and *Lusitanians* sweated after the same  
 “ Manner as *Strabo* gives us Reason to believe;  
 “ the People of *Lusitania*, says he, who dwelt  
 “ upon the Borders of the *Duero*, have, as we  
 “ are assured, absoiutely the same Customs and  
 “ the same Usages which were observed at *La-*  
 “ *cedemon*; they anoint themselves with Oil twice  
 “ a Day, they sweat themselves with red-hot  
 “ Stones, and wash themselves in cold Water;  
 “ and they have but one sort of Food, living  
 “ with great Frugality.”

They practise Bleeding, which is performed  
 by taking a Knife and scarifying the Back of the  
 Hand, over a Vein, then put an Awl under  
 the Vein, and lift it up free from the Skin; cut  
 the Vein with a Knife, and, when it hath bled  
 the Quantity they think proper, they put a Bit  
 of wet Leather over it and tie it up.

They hold in great Esteem the Rind of Pine  
 Tree, or of Juniper, and also an Herb which  
 they call *Wiseaca Pucca* or *Bitter Herb*.

\* *Strabo*, L. 3. 106.

It is an Opinion amongst them, that the Know-  
ledge of Physick is not to be acquired, but is  
hereditary; no one can be a Doctor but the Son  
of a Doctor.

As to the other Set of People besides the Doc-  
tors, which are the Juglers or Conjurers. It is a re-  
ceived Opinion amongst the *Indians* in those Parts,  
that there are two Spirits, one whom they call  
*Manitou*, to which Spirit, they attribute all the  
Perfections of the Deity, the other Spirit they  
call *Vitico*, and that Spirit they imagine to be  
the Cause of all the Evil and Misfortune that  
happens to them, and concerns himself much  
with them. These Juglers pretend to an Inti-  
macy with *Vitico*, erect a Tent which will just  
hold them, and is shaped much like a Butter-  
Churn; black their Faces, and then go alone  
into such Tent where they will make a great  
Variety of Noises in imitation of Animals, jump  
about, and make a great Stir. During the Time,  
all the *Indians* who are near, keep a profound  
Silence, and perhaps, when the Conjurer comes  
out, he will tell them *Vitico* would not come, or  
he hath seen him, and *Vitico* says so and so, as  
to what those *Indians* want to know who hired  
him to conjure for them; which will be some-  
times private Persons, or those of a Tent, or of  
several Tents; if some of his Predictions chance  
to be compleated, he is then in Reputation; if  
not, he suffers only in his Character, but not the  
Art.

Novemb. These Conjurers, or Juglers, will also pretend that they have such an Interest with *Vitico* that they can get him to do particular Persons a shrewd Turn, and often will get Presents from Persons whom they have threatened, to appease them, that they may not make Use of their Interest with *Vitico* to the Persons Disadvantage.

They also pretend they can procure by Conjuring whatever they desire. One imagined himself so dexterous, as he undertook to impose on the People of the Factory, telling the Governor of the Factory that he could conjure as good *Brasil* Tobacco as the Governor sold, and appointed him a time to give a Proof of it, the Governor and two more went agreeable to it, to the *Indian's* Tent; the *Indian* enters the Tent naked, all but the Skin which passes between his Legs, jumps and dances about, and with great Distortions of Body, and this for near two Hours, at length whips his Hand under his Arm-pit, takes from thence some Tobacco which he had concealed there, then rubs his Hand violently on his Breast, and says the Tobacco was coming. The Governor and others who had kept a strict Eye on him, let him know they saw him take the Tobacco from under his Arm, upon which the *Indian* was so much enraged, that they soon quitted the Tent. This was told amongst the *Indians*, but his Character was too well established to have any Effect, for upon a Time after, (these  
Juglers

Juglers pretending to work Cures by Charms) Novemb.  
there was an *Indian* Woman very ill, the Surgeon of the Factory took all proper Care of her, but she imagined there would be no Cure effected without a Conjurer, and pitched upon this same *Indian* for the Man, he came to his Patient, sucked her Breasts, her Thighs, her Legs, and, after about three or four Hours of this Application, he then said she was almost cured, and soon after pulls out of his Mouth a Parcel of Hawks Claws and Partridge Feet, as many as would lie in the Palm of his Hand, these he pretended he had extracted, and that they were actually the Cause of her Disorder. The Woman soon after recovered.

F I N I S.

